

**BAPTIST
INTERNATIONAL
UNIVERSITY**

School of the Scriptures

A Curricula of Teaching Offered to
Independent Baptist Churches
Worldwide



Baptist International University
and the School of the Scriptures
are Ministries under the Authority of
the First Baptist Church of Pachacamac
Lima, Peru

www.BautistaPachacamac.org
www.BaptistInternationalSeminary.org
www.UniversidadBautista.org

Class Number

214A

Class Title

DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Prepared by

N. Sebastian Desent, Ph.D., Th.D., D.D.

Date

March 23, 2021

Credits

1

Level

Associates Level

This Syllabus is Approved for
Baptist International University School of the Scriptures

N. S. Desent, Ph.D., Th.D., D.D.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

This class, entitled *Doctrine of the Scriptures*, teaches what the Scriptures teach about themselves. This class is contrasted to Class 221 *New Testament Doctrine*, which emphasizes what the New Testament teaches about the Doctrine of Christ. This class teaches about the Scriptures – Old and New Testaments – while class 221 teaches about the Commandments of Christ.

This Syllabus can be used in conjunction with other Class Syllabi, which have other Teaching.

NOT FOR SALE

All Materials Offered by *Baptist International University* are Free of Charge.

Baptist International University is a church-authorized international University dedicated to world evangelism, worldwide scripture distribution, and preparing faithful men of God for the work of the ministry.

Since its commission in 1970, Baptist International University has employed scriptural teaching methods and subjects based on the Commandment Doctrine of our Lord Jesus Christ.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

N. Sebastian Desent, Ph.D., Th.D., D.D.; Pastor, Historic Baptist Church

A Syllabus Approved for Baptist International University School of the Scriptures – 1 Credit.

March 23, 2021

Table of Contents

Scripture References	Page 6
Introduction	Page 8
Lesson 1: Jesus is the Divine Original	Page 28
Lesson 2: Inspiration	Page 33
Lesson 3: Revelation	Page 51
Lesson 4: Transmission	Page 61
Lesson 5: Inscription	Page 64
Lesson 6: Perfection	Page 67
Lesson 7: Protection	Page 69
Lesson 8: Duplication	Page 71
Lesson 9: Preservation	Page 74
Lesson 10: Purification	Page 76
Lesson 11: Declaration of Jesus	Page 77
Lesson 12: Discrimination	Page 79
Lesson 13: Salvation	Page 81
Lesson 14: Sanctification	Page 83
Lesson 15: Illumination	Page 84
Lesson 16: Reconciliation	Page 85
Lesson 17: Exertion	Page 86

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 18: Magnification	Page 88
Lesson 19: Persecution	Page 89
Lesson 20: Publication	Page 91
Lesson 21: Reproduction	Page 93
Lesson 22: Multiplication	Page 95
Lesson 23: Nutrition	Page 97
Lesson 24: Reception	Page 99
Lesson 25: Application	Page 102
Lesson 26: Exhortation	Page 103
Lesson 27: Edification	Page 106
Lesson 28: Destruction and Construction	Page 109
Lesson 29: Interpretation	Page 111
Lesson 30: Progression	Page 114
Lesson 31: Retention	Page 116
Lesson 32: Vision	Page 119
Lesson 33: Collection	Page 122
Lesson 34: Translation	Page 126
Lesson 35: Distribution	Page 128
Lesson 36: Liberation	Page 130
Lesson 37: Corruption and Perversion	Page 132
Lesson 38: Pollution	Page 134
Lesson 39: The Church's Responsibility	Page 137
Lesson 40: Contrasting Thoughts	Page 140
Lesson 41: The Profit of the Scriptures	Page 141

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 42: The Use of Translations	Page 142
Lesson 43: Examples of Corruption	Page 143
Lesson 44: Jeremiah 23	Page 147
Lesson 45: The Blessings of the King James Version of 1611	Page 150

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

This page intentionally left blank.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Scripture References

Matthew 4:4

4 But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

Matthew 24:35

35 Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

Mark 13:31

31 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

Luke 21:33

33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

Matthew 5:17-18

17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.

18 For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

Luke 16:16-17

16 The law and the prophets were until John: since that time the kingdom of God is preached, and every man presseth into it.

17 And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail.

Psalms 119:89

89 For ever, O LORD, thy word is settled in heaven.

Psalms 12:6-7

6 The words of the LORD are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.

7 Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.

2 Timothy 3:15

15 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

15 But as he which hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation;

16 Because it is written, Be ye holy; for I am holy.

Romans 11

16 For if the firstfruit be holy, the lump is also holy: and if the root be holy, so are the branches.

Matthew 7

6 Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Luke 11

13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?

John 14

26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

Romans 1

2 (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)

Romans 7

12 Wherefore the law is holy, and the commandment holy, and just, and good.

1 Corinthians 3

17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are.

2 Thessalonians 1

13 But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth:

Ephesians 1

4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

13 In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,

Ephesians 5

27 That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.

2 Peter 1

21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

2 Peter 2

21 For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.

Jude 1

20 But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,

Revelation 15

4 Who shall not fear thee, O Lord, and glorify thy name?

for thou only art holy: for all nations shall come and worship before thee; for thy judgments are made manifest.

Revelation 22

6 And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to shew unto his servants the things which must shortly be done.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Introduction

What is the *Doctrine of the Scriptures*? Answer: What the Scriptures *Do*, and what the scriptures *Teach* about themselves.

The scope of this class will cover all manner of doctrine about the scriptures themselves. The scriptures being God's word, have so much information on this subject. We have provided lessons that separate the many thoughts into assimilable bite-sized measures of *meat*. By rightly dividing the subject, we have organized the lessons into sections that one can focus on without distraction. We will cover such topics as:

- What is God's word?
- What does the Bible say about itself?
- How did we get our Bible?
- How do we identify God's word?
- Why seek God's word?
- How do we properly use God's word?
- How do we properly care for God's word?

As with any subject studied in the Bible, it is a never-ending study. Every study can be a basis for future studies. We will never exhaust the subject, but our goal is to do the due diligence to provide to the student the best study on the subject for the credit applied.

Gods' Word is Perfect in Every Way

- God's word is perfect in content.
- God's word is perfect in completion.
- God's word is perfect in correctness.
- God's word is perfect in Christ.
- God's word is perfect in capability.
- God's word is perfect in its organization.
- God's word is perfect in its beauty.
- God's word is perfect in its delivery.

Proverbs 25:11

A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver.

All of God's words are fitly spoken. The student can imagine that our God – the creator of all things, including language and writing – has provided us his words, his story, his revelation. Not only is it perfect and complete, but it is delivered in a beauty and elegance that no other person can ever achieve. Furthermore, because God used a "*here a little, there a little*" (Isaiah 28:10) method of revelation, we have an infinite source of study. As we compare scripture with scripture, we learn more and more, never reaching the top of God's wisdom and understanding. At the same time, God presents his words in simple direct precepts that are easy for a new-born believer to understand.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

God supplies the process to learn his word in Isaiah 28:9-11:

9: Whom shall he teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? them that are weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts.

10 For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little:

11 For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people.

The Reasons God Gave the Scriptures

This class will teach in detail the many reasons why God gave the word, but there are some principal reasons that we should acknowledge at the beginning in order to set the scope of the class.

1. God desires to reveal his **Person** to his creation. He does this through his creation (Romans 1); man's conscience (Romans 2); the word of God (Romans 3); and through Jesus Christ himself (Romans 4).
2. God desires to reveal his **plan** for his creation. From Genesis to the Revelation we have God's plan revealed – at least as much as he desires to reveal. God's word includes prophecy.
3. God desires to **promote** Jesus Christ to all so that they can be saved. Faith comes by hearing the word of God (Romans 10:17). God's word includes the plan of salvation.
4. God gives his creation the information so that man can be **perfect**, growing in grace the right way, knowing good from evil, right from wrong, and what are the priorities of life (2 Timothy 3:13-17).
5. God gives his word so his people can enjoy with **patience** the comfort of the scriptures and have hope (Romans 15:4).
6. God will bring all things into judgment, so he supplies the scriptures to that we will be **prepared** (Ecclesiastes 11:9; 12:14; John 12:48).
7. God supplies his children with a sharp sword, so they have **protection** while they sojourn in this world (Ephesians 6:17; Hebrews 4:12).

Profiting from the Scriptures (see also Lesson 41)

2 Timothy 3:15-16 tells us the scriptures make one wise unto salvation through faith in Jesus Christ.

Salvation is the gospel is the number one way a person profits from the word of God. Romans 10 is exceptionally enlightening:

8 But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach;

9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.

13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

14 How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?

15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?

17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

18 But I say, Have they not heard? Yes verily, their sound went into all the earth, and their words unto the ends of the world.

There is much to learn from this passage. Note these points:

- Faith speaks on this wise – the word is nigh thee
- Word is in thy mouth and in thy heart
- The word of faith which Paul preached
- Confess and believe
- Whosoever believes on Jesus shall not be ashamed
- Whosoever believes on Jesus shall be saved
- Faith comes by hearing the word of God
- Their words went unto the ends of the world

Hebrews 4:1-3 informs us that the word must be mixed with faith in order to profit the hearers:

1 Let us therefore fear, lest, a promise being left us of entering into his rest, any of you should seem to come short of it.

2 For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.

3 For we which have believed do enter into rest, as he said, As I have sworn in my wrath, if they shall enter into my rest: although the works were finished from the foundation of the world.

We understand through the work of Christ we are reconciled unto God. And God has given his preachers the ministry of reconciliation. See 2 Corinthians 5:14-21:

14 For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead:

15 And that he died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.

16 Wherefore henceforth know we no man after the flesh: yea, though we have known Christ after the flesh, yet now henceforth know we him no more.

17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;

19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

20 Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us: we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God.

21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

2 Timothy 3:15-16 furthermore says that all scripture is profitable for

- Doctrine
- Reproof
- Correction
- Instruction in Righteousness
- That the man of God may be perfect
- Thoroughly furnished unto all good works

The Word of God is the Apostles and Prophets

Ephesians 4:11-12 is helpful to understand how Jesus worked with the revelation of the word of God:

11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;

12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:

In one respect we no longer have men who are apostles and prophets – for we use the word of God. On the other hand, because we have the word of God, we have *in written form the words* of the apostles and prophets (Ephesians 2:20; 3:5; 2 Peter 1:20; 3:2; Revelation 18:20; 22:7, 10, 18).

This is what is used now by evangelists and pastors and teachers. The benefit and purpose of these men and the word of God is the same (we should all make this the priority of the calling) – the perfecting of the saints, the work of the ministry, and the edifying of the body of Christ.

Ephesians 4:14-16 tells us the benefit of the scriptural preaching and teaching is...

14 That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive;

15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ:

16 From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

Being Doers of the Word

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

James reminds us that knowing the word of God is not enough. We must be doers of the word. Read James 1:22-25:

22 But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.

23 For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass:

24 For he beholdeth himself, and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was.

25 But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.

It is by our actions that God weighs our rewards.

1 Samuel 2:3 – Talk no more so exceeding proudly; let not arrogancy come out of your mouth: for the LORD is a God of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed.

Jesus says the doing of the word make one wise: Matthew 7:24 – Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock:

And, understanding comes by doing: Psalm 111:10 – The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do his commandments: his praise endureth for ever.

By doing what God says in the name of Jesus Christ is how we let the word of God dwell in us richly. See Colossians 3:16-17:

16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

17 And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

Persecution Because of the Word

Matthew 13:20 – But he that received the seed into stony places, the same is he that heareth the word, and anon with joy receiveth it;

21 Yet hath he not root in himself, but dureth for a while: for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, by and by he is offended.

A believer who receives and lives by God's word shall suffer persecution: 2 Timothy 3:12 – Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.

Because of this persecution, a man who stands by "the Book" needs to have root in himself (be immune to peer pressure and public opinion) and not be offended in Jesus (Matthew 11:6). This persecution will come from the outside world mainly, but there is also that internal resistance to God's word. Men do not like to be preached to and be told they are wrong. They find it hard to endure sound doctrine. Because of pride they will heap to themselves "teachers," having itching ears (2 Timothy 4:3). They only endure for a while.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Mark 4:17 says “And have no root in themselves, and so endure but for a time: afterward, when affliction or persecution ariseth for the word’s sake, immediately they are offended.” Besides tribulation and persecution, there is also affliction that will arise for the word’s sake. This is the reason people fall away.

What a wonderful Book the Lord has given us – it is a powerful two-edged sword that those who love it will never let go of it. Note Ephesians 6:13-18:

13 Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.

14 Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness;

15 And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace;

16 Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.

17 And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:

18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

The Providential Preservation of God’s Word

Preservation applies to inspiration, or it applies to nothing at all. God gave his words, and he will keep them forever (Psalm 12:7). We shall see the promises and the methods used to accomplish this work of preservation.

Since “all scripture is given by inspiration of God (2 Timothy 3:16), then preservation applies to the inspiration.

- Jesus knew his hearers had read the scriptures – Matthew 21:42
- Jesus fulfilled the scriptures –Mark 14:49
- Jesus expounded unto the disciples in all the scriptures – Luke 24:27
- Timothy had a copy of the scriptures – 2 Timothy 3:15
- Jesus said to “search the scriptures” – John 5:39
- The Ethiopian read the scripture – Acts 8:32
- Paul reasoned out of the scriptures – Acts 17:2
- Writers of the New Testament quoted the scriptures
- Paul confirmed “all scriptures is given by inspiration of God” – 2 Timothy 3:16

All these “scriptures” were copies, and Jesus speaking of “*jots and tittles*” (Matthew 5:18; Luke 16:17) proves these scriptures were in the Hebrew language.

In respect to translations, Jesus and the other apostles quoted the Old Testament in Greek (Matthew 4:4, etc.). We know in these cases the translation is inspired, so we can say that translations can be inspired.

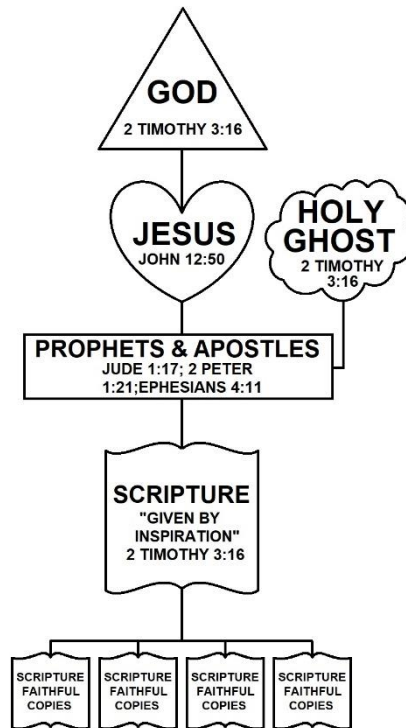
Modernist textual critics says only the *original autographs* were inspired, and we only have copies today. However, even the *original autographs* are not always such. The word autograph implies the book or letter was written with the author’s own hand. *Given by inspiration* means God is the Author, but God used human instrumentality to record his word in writing. Therefore, even the first writings were copies of God’s word. Furthermore, 1 Peter 1:21 says, “holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.”

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Even the prophets *spake* the word – they did not necessarily *write* the word. Many used scribes or amanuenses to copy what was dictated or what was given by memory. Even if the first writing *was* made by the hand of the prophet, it is considered a copy of what God dictated. A search of the Bible does not mention “*original autographs.*”

Therefore, we can conclude that all scripture is a copy of God’s inspired words.

Similar to the *Path of Doctrine*, we can illustrate the scripture being given by inspiration thusly:



God’s Word is Incorruptible Seed

According to 1 Peter 1:23-35 God’s word is incorruptible. This is not to say that some have tried to corrupt it. We have God’s incorruptible, perfect, preserved, inspired word today.

Corruption of God’s Word by Outside Influences

Although God’s word is perfectly given, the effort to corrupt God’s word has never ceased. The attacks have gone on since God gave his word. From Genesis 2 to Revelation 22 God’s word is attacked at every turn. From, “Yea hath God?” said to “if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

prophecy”; we can expect every single word God said to be denied, contradicted, challenged, mocked, ignored, belittled, misinterpreted, and scorned.

God’s word has been the object of attack from many areas:

- The Devil
- Scholarship
- Ignorance of men
- Pride of men
- Hate for truth
- Humanism
- False religions

Consequently, we have God’s word perfectly preserved throughout history as a shining light (Psalm 119:105) and a few corrupt works being imposed upon Christianity as the word of God.

We have the good and bad texts divided and obviously presented:

The Good

 Masoretic Text
 MT
 Textus Receptus (T/R)
 Byzantine
 Antiochian
 Erasmus
 Beza
 Stephanus
 Elzivers
 Traditional Text
 Majority Text
 Peshitta
 Old Syriac
 Received Text
 Bible-believers
 Tyndale
 Coverdale
 Rogers
 Taverner
 Great Bible
 Coverdale Bible
 Bishop’s Bible
 King James Version
 Bible-believers

The Bad

 Septuagint
 LXX
 Modern Critical Text (MCT)
 Alexandrian
 Codex Vaticanus
 Wescott and Hort
 Griesbach
 Lachmann
 Nestle-Aland
 Eclectic Text
 Minority Text
 UBS
 Codex Sinaiticus
 Eusebius
 Constantine
 Hexalpa
 Tischendorf
 Origen
 Scrivener*

The Ugly

 Sinaiticus
 New World Translation
 Dark Ages
 Inquisition
 Idolatry
 False doctrines
 Romanism
 Nicolaitanism
 Douay-Rheims
 Traditions
 Pope
 Vatican
 Persecutions
 Heresies
 Corruption

** F.H.A. Scrivener was on the RV committee and was pro-RV. He was tasked by the committee to rebuild the Greek text underlying the KJV. This Greek Text is generally accurate and useful to show departure texts. It should not be used for translation or deep study. It does not match the KJV underlying text perfectly. See Class 304B pp. 579-694.*

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

From Which Tree Do You Eat?

Jesus said in Matthew 12:33: “Either make the tree good, and his fruit good; or else make the tree corrupt, and his fruit corrupt: for the tree is known by his fruit.”

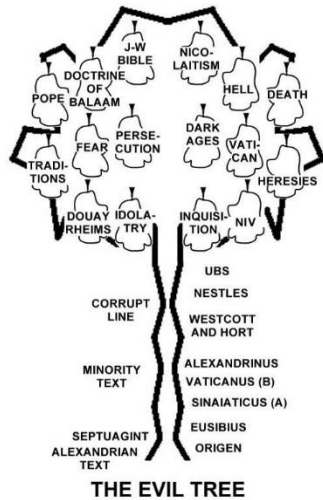
He said again in Luke 6:44: “For every tree is known by his own fruit. For of thorns men do not gather figs, nor of a bramble bush gather they grapes.”

A tree is known by its fruit. If you are looking for good fruit you go to a good tree. A person can check the fruit (be a fruit inspector) of texts to easily see whether it comes from a good tree or an evil tree. Here are a few areas to inspect:

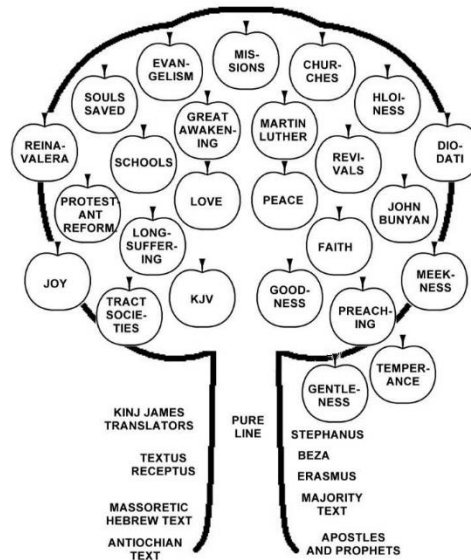
- Internal evidence
- External evidence
- Historical evidence
- Testimonial evidence
- Personal evidence
- Associational evidence
- Product evidence – the proof of the pudding is in the eating.

All the evidence is available to an inspector. We ought to make sure to do the due diligence in selecting from which tree we eat.

FROM WHICH TREE DO YOU EAT?



THE EVIL TREE



THE GOOD TREE

WE ARE NOT THOSE THAT
CORRUPT THE BIBLE

A corrupt tree cannot bring forth good fruit

Private Interpretation or Holy Men of God

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Then we understand the word of God came from God, not man. Furthermore, God through his Spirit will enlighten us and guide us in the study of his word. We look to 2 Peter 1:20-21:

20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation.

21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

We understand this passage to teach that the word of God was not given by man (v. 21) or that it is of private interpretation – that is to say, a man’s privately held opinion or his own understanding of things. Rather, the scripture came by the men moved by the Holy Ghost.

The importance of this passage means that first, the source of scripture is God; and second, the meaning of what God says will be known by many. It is in the multitude of witnesses that the truth is known (2 Corinthians 13:1; John 8:17). The truth of God’s word is testified to by other passages and prophets in the scripture.

This means we should not create a doctrine from only one mention in the New Testament. If the idea is only mentioned once – and not attested to by other scripture – we ought to be very careful that we understand and apply the passage correctly.

For example, I have heard that certain Mormon’s baptize people “for the dead.” Misinterpreting 1 Corinthians 15:29, the leaders have younger members get baptized for dead people who were never baptized, thus helping the dead Mormons be obedient to baptism. This is a totally incorrect application of 1 Corinthians 15:29. How do we know? Because nowhere else in scripture is this idea taught, practiced, or even alluded to. Paul is speaking about the resurrection, and those who are baptized are symbolizing the death, burial, and the resurrection of Christ as believers in Christ. Paul is saying in so many words: *If the dead do not rise, why are believers baptized showing a death, burial, and resurrection? Why are they baptized for the dead if the dead do not rise?*

This interpretation we know is correct. Paul said in Romans 6:3-5:

3 Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death?

4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

For this reason we reject paraphrase translations. With these types of translations the reader is relying on the author to interpret and explain the meaning of what *he thinks* God said. We refer to have God’s word as given and have in our hands *what God said*, and then through study and the work of the Holy Ghost learn what God means in passages that are hard to understand.

Scriptural Considerations when Identifying the Correct vs. the Corrupt Manuscripts

When identifying the correct text in Greek, Hebrew, or in a translation; God has given us in his word the rules we should follow. We do not rely upon scholars. We rely upon the Holy Ghost.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

The most obvious discussion for Christians is whether to use the Textus Receptus (T/R) or the Modern Critical Text (MCT).

There are some scriptural and common-sense rules we can trust when identifying God's word in the many manuscripts:

1. If God preserved his word, it would be available throughout all the time. It would not disappear without evidence and then reappear centuries later with no previous witness (Psalm 12:7). Therefore, the text used by churches over the last *two thousand years* is preferred above a text edited in the last *two hundred years*.
2. God's word is loved by God's people and they keep his word. Therefore, when identifying the right text, we should be asking the right people – not unbelievers and critics of God's word. God gave his word to the churches, and to the churches we shall go (Psalm 68:11).
3. Following the thought above, manuscripts that are well-worn or show evidence of use through translations or by references of church leaders should be more readily accepted than pristine manuscripts that appear never to be used or discarded manuscripts rejected by the users. It is by reason of use that God's people discern good and evil (Hebrews 5:14).
4. God's word will have a multitude of testimony. God himself said that out of the mouth of two or three witnesses the truth is established. Consequently, God's word will have multiple witnesses as to the right text. A single manuscript alone is not a sufficiently credible witness (Matthew 18:16; 2 Corinthians 13:1).
5. God's word will not be changing every few years based on *most recent discoveries*. God gave his word. It was and is perfect, complete, known, and testified to. God's word is not a moving target that we must rely on scholars to identify (Psalm 119:89; Malachi 3:6).
6. There should be no internal contradictions. God's word always agrees with itself. We compare spiritual with spiritual (1 Corinthians 2:13; 1 Corinthians 14:33).
7. The scriptures will always magnify Christ. He is not diminished in any manner (John 5:39; Colossians 1:17).
8. In respect to the Old Testament, we know the promises of preservation and fulfillment apply to the Hebrew scriptures, not a Greek translation (Romans 3:1-2; Matthew 5:18; Luke 16:17).
9. Because we have "every word" that God gave us (Deuteronomy 8:3; Proverbs 30:5; Matthew 4:4), a text that omits a part of God's word should be identified as faulty. If there is a possibility that the words in the text are actually additions, then comparisons to other texts should show the truth (2 Corinthians 13:1).
10. Similarly to point 9 above, another component of the judging of a text as to whether it is correct or not is determined by the method of copying or editing. Man is commanded by Christ to live by "every word" that God gave (Matthew 4:4; Luke 4:4; and Proverbs 30:5; 2 Corinthians 13:1; etc.). Any text that replaces the actual plenary words with paraphrases or ideas is a contrary method of copying God's word. *Each and every word* is inspired and important to preserve, and this is done by believers who uphold the inspiration and infallibility of God's word. The difference in textual

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

criticism is the difference between *formal correspondence* and *dynamic equivalence*.

11. Is the source of the text Antiochian or Alexandrian? Christians were called such first at Antioch (Acts 11:26) and prophets from Jerusalem went there (Acts 11:27). We know the missionary journeys of Paul and his co-laborers were sent from that church in Antioch (Acts 13:1-3). Alexandria, in contrast, is first mentioned in Acts 6:9-15 when certain Jews, although “they were not able to resist the wisdom and spirit by which [Stephen] spake,” still suborned (i.e., *bribed*) men, stirred up the people, set up false witnesses, and delivered Stephen to the council that ultimately stoned him to death. Stephen is noted as saying in Acts 7:51-53:

51 Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.

52 Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

53 Who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept it.

Alexandria is also mentioned in respect to Apollos (Acts 18:24-28). Although Apollos (quite the name for a Jewish boy) he was “instructed in the way of the Lord” and “taught diligently the things of the Lord,” he was not fully knowledgeable of the right way. We find that Aquila and Priscilla “expounded unto him the way of the God more perfectly.” Aquila was likely a pastor (1 Corinthians 16:19) and he worked with Timothy in Ephesus (2 Timothy 4:19). Aquila was a close companion of the Apostle Paul (Acts 18:1-4).

Although the associations of the two places are shown in the scriptures to be opposed – one resisting the word of God and setting up false witnesses, and the other a place of Christianity and missionary work; we can only apply these facts so far to manuscripts. However, the information supplied in the New Testament is sufficient to alert students of the potential danger of Alexandrian type manuscripts.

12. God blesses his word, and God blesses the hearers of his word (Matthew 13:16; Luke 11:28). Consequently, we ought to consider it a weighty thing when we see the blessings of God poured out on a certain family of manuscripts. These blessings can be considered as souls saved, churches edified, victory in the spiritual battle, material and other blessings in the home and governments that uphold the word, etc.
13. In respect to comparing the texts, and also in the case of translation, we know that “every word of God is pure,” and that it is not to be added to (Proverbs 30:5-6). In practical study, does the text convey the *actual words* God used (proved by comparing witnesses) or does the text “paraphrase” and try to convey some *idea* or *meaning* as understood by the writer? We want to have “*every word*” that God gave, not some man’s *opinion* of what God meant to say.

Paul’s Handling of the Word of God

From 2 Corinthians 4:1-5 we find Paul’s confession in respect to the word of God:

1 Therefore seeing we have this ministry, as we have received mercy, we faint not;

2 But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

handling the word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God.

3 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost:

4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

5 For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; and ourselves your servants for Jesus' sake.

From this passage we can summarize these things:

- We continue as we have received (the principle of the Textus Receptus – 2 Timothy 2:2)
- We faint not
- We renounce dishonesty
- We do not walk in craftiness
- We do not handle the word of God deceitfully
- We manifest the truth
- We preach the gospel to all
- It is the devil that blinds the minds of unbelievers
- We preach Jesus Christ
- We are simply servants for Jesus' sake

Paul's Revelations

In 2 Corinthians 12:1-4 Paul inform us that he has direct revelation from God:

1 It is not expedient for me doubtless to glory. I will come to visions and revelations of the Lord.

2 I knew a man in Christ above fourteen years ago, (whether in the body, I cannot tell; or whether out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;) such an one caught up to the third heaven.

3 And I knew such a man, (whether in the body, or out of the body, I cannot tell: God knoweth;)

4 How that he was caught up into paradise, and heard unspeakable words, which it is not lawful for a man to utter.

- Paul confesses he had "visions and revelations of the Lord."
- He was caught up to the third heaven, which he calls paradise.
- He is unsure if he was in the body or not.
- He heard "unspeakable words."
- These words were not lawful for a man to utter.

Paul confirms the gospel was revealed to him by Christ himself:

Galatians 1:11 – But I certify you, brethren, that the gospel which was preached of me is not after man.

12 For I neither received it of man, neither was I taught it, but by the revelation of Jesus Christ.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Paul's Letters Described

Paul describes his letters in 2 Corinthians 10:1-12:

1 Now I Paul myself beseech you by the meekness and gentleness of Christ, who in presence am base among you, but being absent am bold toward you:

2 But I beseech you, that I may not be bold when I am present with that confidence, wherewith I think to be bold against some, which think of us as if we walked according to the flesh.

3 For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh:

4 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;)

5 Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;

6 And having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience, when your obedience is fulfilled.

7 Do ye look on things after the outward appearance? If any man trust to himself that he is Christ's, let him of himself think this again, that, as he is Christ's, even so are we Christ's.

8 For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed:

9 That I may not seem as if I would terrify you by letters.

10 For his letters, say they, are weighty and powerful; but his bodily presence is weak, and his speech contemptible.

11 Let such an one think this, that, such as we are in word by letters when we are absent, such will we be also in deed when we are present.

12 For we dare not make ourselves of the number, or compare ourselves with some that commend themselves: but they measuring themselves by themselves, and comparing themselves among themselves, are not wise.

- His letters were bold.
- The word of God, as a weapon, is mighty through God to pulling down strongholds.
- Paul spoke and write with authority.
- This authority was given by the Lord.
- This authority was given for edification, not destruction.
- People said Paul's letters are weighty and powerful.

Peter's Commentary on Paul's Letters

In 2 Peter 3:15-16, Peter comments on Paul's epistles:

15 And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you;

16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.

- Peter mentions the writings of Paul
- Peter mentions "all his epistles."

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- Peter admits some things are hard to be understood.
- Peter says the unlearned and unstable wrest his epistles as they do “also” the other scriptures.
- Peter is confirming Paul’s epistles are scripture.

False Revelation and Corrupting the Word of God

Paul warns of false apostles in 2 Corinthians 11:12-15

12 But what I do, that I will do, that I may cut off occasion from them which desire occasion; that wherein they glory, they may be found even as we.

13 For such are false apostles, deceitful workers, transforming themselves into the apostles of Christ.

14 And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.

15 Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

- Paul determined to cut off occasion from those false teachers who desired an occasion to deceive the church into thinking they were equal to or better than Paul, or that Paul was not authoritative.
- Paul calls them false apostles and deceitful workers.
- Paul reminds the church that Satan is transformed into an angel of light.
- Therefore, Paul says it is no great thing if his ministers do the same.

The Writings of the Apostles John and Paul in Respect to Scripture

John wrote his letters with “paper and ink.” He says in 2 John 1:12: “Having many things to write unto you, I would not write with paper and ink: but I trust to come unto you, and speak face to face, that our joy may be full.” He wrote again in 3 John 1:13: “I had many things to write, but I will not with ink and pen write unto thee....”

This “paper” is mentioned twice in the whole Bible: Isaiah 19:7 says, “The paper reeds by the brooks, by the mouth of the brooks, and every thing sown by the brooks, shall wither, be driven away, and be no more.” And then what we read in 2 John 1:12.

The word for paper in 2 John is used once in the New Testament. It is the word *chartou*. It is a sheet of paper made by papyrus strips (Strong’s 5489), and the root word is rather obvious.

The Hebrew word for *paper reeds* in Isaiah is *‘ā-rō-wī* and used only once. It means *paper reeds* (or *bulrushes*) and has as a root a word akin to “bare space” (Strong’s 6169).

We see then that *paper* (i.e., papyrus) was used in the writing of the New Testament, and the Bible itself tells us it is made of *reeds*.

2 Timothy 4:13 mentions the word *parchments*: “The cloke that I left at Troas with Carpus, when thou comest, bring with thee, and the books, but especially the parchments.”

According to *Brittanica.com*:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Parchment, the processed skins of certain animals – chiefly sheep, goats, and calves – that have been prepared for the purpose of writing on them. The name apparently derives from the ancient Greek city of Pergamum (modern Bergama, Turkey), where parchment is said to have been invented in the 2nd century bc.

The Greek word Paul uses for parchments is *membranas*, it is used once in the Bible, and means *parchments* (Strong's 3200). Thus referring to dressed skins. Interestingly, the Spanish word for *parchments* is *pergaminos*, which shows a connection to *Pergamum* (Revelation 2:12). The Greek word *Pergamō* refers to a city of Mysia in Asia.

History shows there was a library at Pergamum. According to *Wikipedia*:

Pergamum was home to a library said to house approximately 200,000 volumes, according to the writings of Plutarch. Built by Eumenes II between 220 and 159 BC and situated at the northern end of the Acropolis, it became one of the most important libraries in the ancient world. The cultured Pergamene rulers built up the library to be second only to the Great Library at Alexandria.

Parchment, is described by *Wikipedia*:

Parchment is a writing material made from specially prepared untanned skins of animals – primarily sheep, calves, and goats. It has been used as a writing medium for over two millennia. Vellum is a finer quality parchment made from the skins of young animals such as lambs and young calves.

It may be called animal membrane by libraries and museums that wish to avoid distinguishing between “parchment” and the more-restricted term “vellum.”

Below is an image of a stretched goatskin.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES



Continuing from *Wikipedia*:

In the 2nd century BC, a great library was set up in Pergamon that rivaled the famous Library of Alexandria. As prices rose for papyrus and the reed used for making it was over-harvested towards local extinction in the two nomes of the Nile delta that produced it, Pergamon adapted by increasing use of parchment.

A study of paper and parchment in respect to the scripture would be very profitable.

Divine Authorship of the Scriptures

In respect to Divine Authorship, we learn from the New Testament that a three persons of the Godhead are involved.

John's vision in the Revelation tells of Jesus saying to him in 1:11: "Saying, I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last: and, What thou seest, write in a book, and send it unto the seven churches which are in Asia; unto Ephesus, and unto Smyrna, and unto Pergamos, and unto Thyatira, and unto Sardis, and unto Philadelphia, and unto Laodicea."

John wrote the under the leadership of Jesus Christ in Revelation. And knowing, "For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one" (1 John 5:7); we find in the New Testament **God** giving the scripture by inspiration (2 Timothy 3:16), holy men of old being moved by the **Holy Ghost** (2 Peter 1:21), and **Jesus** giving the words to John to write. So we see all three persons of the Godhead are involved in scripture writing.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Describing the Bible

To describe the Bible is not a simple task, for we will always be lacking in some important description. We do present this old poem that is somewhat well-known, because it is a blessing and is appropriate.

The Bible

The Bible contains the mind of God, the state of man, the way of salvation, the doom of sinners, and the happiness of believers.

Its doctrines are holy, its precepts are binding, its histories are true, and its decisions are immutable.

Read it to be wise, believe it to be safe, and practice it to be holy.

It contains light to direct you, food to support you, and comfort to cheer you.

It is the traveler's map, the pilgrim's staff, the pilot's compass, the soldier's sword, and the Christian's charter.

Here paradise is restored, heaven opened, and the gates of hell disclosed.

The Lord Jesus Christ is its grand Object, our good its design, and the glory of God its end.

Let it fill the memory, rule the heart, and guide the feet. Read it slowly, frequently, prayerfully.

It is a mine of wealth, a paradise of glory, and a river of pleasure.

Follow its precepts and it will lead you to Calvary, to the empty tomb, to a resurrected life in Christ; yes, to glory itself, for eternity.

It is given you in life, will be opened at the judgment, and will be remembered forever.

It involves the highest responsibility, will reward the greatest labor, and will condemn all who trifle with its sacred contents.

Author unknown.

The Word of God to Have Free Course

2 Thessalonians 3:1 says: "Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have free course, and be glorified, even as it is with you:"

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

There are those who would hinder the word of God and its effect in the lives of people. Paul spoke of our spiritual battle in Ephesians 6:10-20, saying in verse 12: “For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.”

In 2 Thessalonians Paul says, “pray for us.” The word of God is quick and powerful (Hebrews 4:12) and it has the promise of God’s providential preservation. It will not return void (Isaiah 55:11). But it is we who need prayer so that we can deliver the word of God to lost souls. “But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost” (2 Corinthians 4:3). It is we who need prayer so that the word of God be glorified in our lives.

The word of God is glorified in the life of a believer by:

- Receiving it (Acts 13:48)
- Allowing it to produce good fruit (John 15:8)
- By obedience to the word of God (2 Corinthians 9:13)
- By our speech (1 Peter 4:11)

Furthermore, we should pray that the word of the Lord spreads throughout the world freely, quickly, and effectively. The margin note in the KJV says “may run.” This gives the idea that it has no hinderances and can travel quickly. In Acts 17 we read of Paul’s preaching in Thessalonica and the results:

- 1 Now when they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where was a synagogue of the Jews:
- 2 And Paul, as his manner was, went in unto them, and three sabbath days reasoned with them out of the scriptures,
- 3 Opening and alleging, that Christ must needs have suffered, and risen again from the dead; and that this Jesus, whom I preach unto you, is Christ.
- 4 And some of them believed, and consorted with Paul and Silas; and of the devout Greeks a great multitude, and of the chief women not a few.
- 5 But the Jews which believed not, moved with envy, took unto them certain lewd fellows of the baser sort, and gathered a company, and set all the city on an uproar, and assaulted the house of Jason, and sought to bring them out to the people.

The persecution was such that “the brethren immediately sent away Paul and Silas by night unto Berea” (v. 10). But notice the good things that happened in Thessalonica:

- Some believed
- They consorted with Paul and Silas
- A great multitude of devout Greeks believed
- Many chief women believed

Many times the persecution for God’s word is the result of it having a great effect.

How Can the World be Taught What They Do Not Have?

The Great Commission command us to “teach all nations.” We are happy to be used of God in world evangelism. But we must understand the need of the scriptures in this work of teaching. We teach the

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

world the word of God. We start with the Gospel, then we go on to teaching “all things” that Christ commanded.

The work of the churches should never overlook the scripture work – getting a copy of the scriptures into the hands of those who do not have it. Working together we can accomplish what God pleases and have it prosper in the thing whereto God sends it (Isaiah 55:11).

The Connection of this Class to Love Commandment Doctrine

The word of God contains the truth of Jesus Christ, his commandments, his life, and ensample. We are told to teach all nations his commandments, the greatest being the commandments to love God and love one another as Jesus did.

To show our love for Christ we keep his commandments – “If ye love me, keep my commandments” (John 14:15). As we learn the doctrine of the scriptures, we can keep the commandments – not only from being obedient to them – and preserve them for and distribute them to the world.

Conclusion

A simple verse is sufficient for a conclusion to this introduction:

For ever, O LORD, Thy word is settled in heaven. Psalm 119:89

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 1: Jesus is the Divine Original

I. Jesus is the Divine Original of the Word

- A. John 1:1-3
- B. John 5:39 – scriptures testify of Christ
- C. Jesus is the Alpha and Omega
- D. Author and finisher of our faith

II. Jesus was in the Beginning

- A. Genesis 1:1 – In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.
- B. John 1:1 – In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.
- C. 2 The same was in the beginning with God.
- D. Colossians 1:13 – Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:
- E. 14 In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:
- F. 15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:
- G. 16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:
- H. 17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.
- I. 18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.
- J. 19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;

III. Jesus is the Word

- A. The Living Word – John 1:1
- B. Spoken word – 2 Timothy 2:9
- C. Written word – 2 Timothy 1:9-14; 2 Timothy 3:16
- D. Revelation 19:13 – And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

IV. The Word was Made Flesh

- A. John 1:14 – And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.
- B. Luke 24:39 – Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.
- C. 1 Timothy 3:16 – And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached unto the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.
- D. 1 Peter 4:1 – Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

likewise with the same mind: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin;

V. All Things Were Made by Jesus

- A. John 1:3 – All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.
- B. 4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men.
- C. Colossians 1:13 – Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:
- D. 14 In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:
- E. 15 Who is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of every creature:
- F. 16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:
- G. 17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.
- H. 18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.
- I. 19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fulness dwell;

VI. Jesus' Words are Life

- A. In him was life
- B. Jesus spoke as God
- C. Jesus' words are life – John 6
- D. Gospel
- E. 1 Peter 1:21
- F. Romans 1:16

VII. Jesus Spoke Directly the Words of the Father

- A. John 12: 47 – And if any man hear my words, and believe not, I judge him not: for I came not to judge the world, but to save the world.
- B. 48 He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day.
- C. 49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.
- D. 50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting: whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

VIII. Christ's Doctrine in Writing

- A. The New Testament records forever the Doctrine of Christ
- B. Four gospels
- C. All that Jesus did and taught (Acts 1:1)
- D. Jesus' Commandments – Matthew 28:18-20

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

IX. The Doctrine of the Scriptures compared to Jesus

- A. Both were conceived by the Holy Ghost
- B. Both give life
- C. Both are perfect
- D. Both are eternal
- E. Both manifest God the Father

JESUS WORK COMPARED TO THE SCRIPTURES				
NUMBER	EVENT	JESUS	THE WORD OF GOD	REFERENCE
1	Conceived by the Holy Ghost	The Holy Ghost came upon Mary.	Holy men spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.	Matthew 1:20; 2 Peter 1:21
2	Jesus conceived by incorruptible seed.	No earthly father.	The seed is the word of God.	Luke 8:11; 1 Peter 1:21
3	Virgin Born	Mary gave birth as a virgin	The word of God written as scripture.	John 1:14
4	God is the Father	God is Jesus' Father	God is the Author of the word.	Psalms 68:11; John 3:16
5	Sinless Life -- impeccability	Jesus knew no sin.	The word of God is pure and holy.	Proverbs 30:5
6	Confounds the wise.	Jesus and the Lawyers	Natural man cannot understand	1 Corinthians 1:19-27; 3:19-20
7	Stumbles the Religious.	Jesus and the Pharisees	The word of God is spiritually understood.	Matthew 23
8	Full of grace and truth.	Jesus	God's word is truth	John 1:14; 17:17
9	Baptism	Start of earthly ministry.	Written before death of the apostles.	2 Peter 1:15
10	Anointing	Jesus anointed at his Baptism.	Scripture prove their inspiration.	2 Peter 3:15-16

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

11	Temptation	Jesus proved to be sinless.	Bible proved to be inerrant.	Matthew 4; Proverbs 30:5-6
12	Miracles performed	Raised the dead, cleansed the leper, gave sight to the blind, gave a right walk to the lame, etc.	Gives new life, cleanses sin, gives spiritual enlightenment, shows how to live a new life, etc.	Matthew 11:5, 2 Corinthians 4, etc.
13	Mocked and rejected.	Some rejected Christ and scorned his teaching.	The word of God is mocked and rejected by some.	Matthew 20:19; Acts 2:13; 17:32; Jude 1:18
14	Death	Jesus crucified	Bible destroyed during the dark ages.	Romans 1:28; John 12:48
15	Burial	Jesus in a tomb for three days.	Most-pure Bibles hidden from destruction.	2 Corinthians 4:4
16	Resurrection	Jesus rose from the grave.	Scriptures resurfaced after dark ages. Gospel still preached.	1 Corinthians 15:1-4; 1 Peter 1:21
17	The Great Commission	The Gospel and Jesus' Commandments to be preached worldwide.	Scriptures to be made manifest to all nations.	Matthew 28:18-20; Romans 16:25-26
18	Ascension	Jesus at the Right Hand of the Father	God's word magnified and forever settled in heaven.	Psalms 119:89; 138:2
19	Pentecost and the Languages of men.	Jesus endues with power, and many hear the word of God in the tongue wherein they were born.	Scripture is translated in many languages.	Luke 24:49; Acts 2
20	Persecution of the church in Jerusalem.	Saints go everywhere preaching the word.	The word of God is distributed everywhere.	Acts 8

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

21	Holy Ghost sealed in believers.	Cornelius, etc.	Same word in different languages.	John 20:22; Acts 10, Ephesians 1
22	A seed must die to bring forth much fruit.	Jesus bore his cross to death; we bear our cross daily.	Original Hebrew and koine Greek are no longer popular languages.	John 12:24; Luke 9:23; 1 Corinthians 15:31
23	No corruption after death.	Heavenly vs. earthly bodies.	The death of the koine language preserves the word from more corruption.	1 Corinthians 15
24	Jesus never leaves us	Jesus is with us always.	God's word shall not pass away.	Matthew 28:20, John 14:18; Hebrews 13:5; Matthew 24:35.
25	Jesus returning as the Judge	Jesus is the judge.	Jesus judges by the word.	John 5:22; 12:48

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 2: The Inspiration of the Word of God

I. The Scriptures are Given by Inspiration

- A. 2 Timothy 3:15 – And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.
- B. 16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:
- C. Scriptures are holy
- D. Scriptures show salvation
- E. Scriptures show Jesus

II. Scriptures Show the Way of Salvation

- A. John 5:37 – And the Father himself, which hath sent me, hath borne witness of me. Ye have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape.
- B. 38 And ye have not his word abiding in you: for whom he hath sent, him ye believe not.
- C. 39 Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.
- D. 40 And ye will not come to me, that ye might have life.

III. The Scriptures are Holy

- A. 2 Timothy 3:15 – And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.
- B. Romans 1:2 – (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)
- C. Psalm 145:17 – The LORD is righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works.
- D. Romans 7:12 – Wherefore the law is holy, and the commandment holy, and just, and good.
- E. Psalm 99:3 – Let them praise thy great and terrible name; for it is holy.
- F. Psalm 138:2 – I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name.

IV. Holy Men of Old Spake as They were Moved by the Holy Ghost

- A. Prophecy proves inspiration of God in the man and in the scriptures.
- B. 2 Peter 1:21 – For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.
- C. Not by the will of man
- D. Holy men of God spake – verbally spoken
- E. Being moved by the Holy Ghost – prophets
- F. Words of the prophets were written down.

V. Jeremiah was Inspired of God and Preached the Word of God

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. 1 The words of Jeremiah the son of Hilkiyah, of the priests that were in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin:
- B. 2 To whom the word of the LORD came in the days of Josiah the son of Amon king of Judah, in the thirteenth year of his reign.
- C. 3 It came also in the days of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah king of Judah, unto the end of the eleventh year of Zedekiah the son of Josiah king of Judah, unto the carrying away of Jerusalem captive in the fifth month.
- D. 4 Then the word of the LORD came unto me, saying,
- E. 5 Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.
- F. 6 Then said I, Ah, Lord GOD! behold, I cannot speak: for I am a child.
- G. 7 But the LORD said unto me, Say not, I am a child: for thou shalt go to all that I shall send thee, and whatsoever I command thee thou shalt speak.
- H. 8 Be not afraid of their faces: for I am with thee to deliver thee, saith the LORD.
- I. 9 Then the LORD put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the LORD said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth.
- J. 10 See, I have this day set thee over the nations and over the kingdoms, to root out, and to pull down, and to destroy, and to throw down, to build, and to plant.
- K. 11 Moreover the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, Jeremiah, what seest thou? And I said, I see a rod of an almond tree.
- L. 12 Then said the LORD unto me, Thou hast well seen: for I will hasten my word to perform it.
- M. 13 And the word of the LORD came unto me the second time, saying, What seest thou? And I said, I see a seething pot; and the face thereof is toward the north.
- N. 14 Then the LORD said unto me, Out of the north an evil shall break forth upon all the inhabitants of the land.

VI. John the Baptist was Inspired of God and Preached the Word of God

- A. Luke 3:2 – Annas and Caiaphas being the high priests, the word of God came unto John the son of Zacharias in the wilderness.
- B. Filled with the Holy Ghost from his mother's womb
- C. Luke 1:15 – For he shall be great in the sight of the Lord, and shall drink neither wine nor strong drink; and he shall be filled with the Holy Ghost, even from his mother's womb.

VII. Paul was Inspired of God and Preached the Word of God

- A. 1 Corinthians 2:9 – But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.
- B. 10 But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.
- C. 11 For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.
- D. 12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.
- E. 13 Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- F. 14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.
- G. 15 But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man.
- H. 16 For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ.

VIII. Inspiration of the Word of God Applies For Ever

- A. Matthew 5:18 – For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.
- B. Matthew 24:35 – Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.
- C. Mark 13:31 – Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.
- D. Luke 21:32 – Verily I say unto you, This generation shall not pass away, till all be fulfilled.
- E. 33 Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

IX. Prophecy in the Bible and the Fulfillment thereof Proves the Inspiration of God

- A. J. Barton Payne’s Encyclopedia of Biblical Prophecy lists 1,239 prophecies in the Old Testament and 578 prophecies in the New Testament, for a total of 1,817. These encompass 8,352 verses.
- B. J. Barton Payne in his Encyclopedia of Bible Prophecy gives a list of 191 prophecies that he deems as having a “personal reference to Christ.”
- C. Jesus fulfills over 300 prophecies in the Bible proving he is the Messiah.
- D. See Chart Below.

X. The New Testament Describes How the Scriptures Function

- A. Scriptures can be read – Matthew 21:42; Mark 12:10
- B. Scriptures can be known – Matthew 22:29; Mark 12:24
- C. Scriptures can be fulfilled – Matthew 26:54, 56; Mark 15:28; Luke 4:21
- D. Scriptures can be expounded – Luke 24:27
- E. Scriptures can be opened – Luke 24:32
- F. Scriptures can be understood – Luke 24:5
- G. Scriptures can be believed – John 2:22
- H. Scriptures can be searched – John 5:39; Acts 17:11
- I. Scriptures can speak – John 7:38, 42
- J. Scriptures cannot be broken – John 10:35
- K. Scriptures can be preached – Acts 8:35
- L. Scriptures can give reason – Acts 17:2
- M. Scriptures can make a man mighty in the scriptures – Acts 18:24
- N. Scriptures show that Jesus is the Christ – Acts 18:28
- O. Scriptures promise certain things – Romans 1:2
- P. Scriptures give patience and comfort – Romans 15:4
- Q. Scriptures are commanded to be made known unto all nations – Romans 16:26
- R. Scriptures give the gospel – 1 Corinthians 15:1-4
- S. Scriptures can foresee the future – Galatians 3:8

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- T. Scriptures conclude that all are under sin – Galatians 3:22
- U. Scriptures can make one wise unto salvation – 2 Timothy 3:15
- V. Scriptures are given by inspiration of God – 2 Timothy 3:16
- W. Scriptures contain prophecy – 1 Peter 2:6; 2 Peter 1:20
- X. Scriptures can be wrestled to the destruction of unlearned and unstable – 2 Peter 3:16

XI. Other Passages Showing Inspiration of the Prophets

- A. 2 Kings 17:13 – Yet the LORD testified against Israel, and against Judah, by all the prophets, and by all the seers, saying, Turn ye from your evil ways, and keep my commandments and my statutes, according to all the law which I commanded your fathers, and which I sent to you by my servants the prophets.
- B. 14 Notwithstanding they would not hear, but hardened their necks, like to the neck of their fathers, that did not believe in the LORD their God.
- C. Nehemiah 9:30 – Yet many years didst thou forbear them, and testifiedst against them by thy spirit in thy prophets: yet would they not give ear: therefore gavest thou them into the hand of the people of the lands.
- D. Mark 12:36 – For David himself said by the Holy Ghost, The Lord said to my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, till I make thine enemies thy footstool.
- E. 1 Corinthians 2:13 – Which things also we speak, not in the words which man’s wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.
- F. Hebrews 1:1 – God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,
- G. 2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;
- H. 1 Peter 1:9 – Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.
- I. 10 Of which salvation the prophets have inquired and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you:

XII. An Outline of Psalm 119

- A. This Psalm of David excels all other Psalms, and it references the word of God in every verse.
- B. 176 verses, longest Psalm and longest chapter in the Bible. 22 stanzas, eight verses in each stanza.
- C. It is an acrostic poem, with each set of 8 verses beginning with a letter of the Hebrew alphabet, which has 22 letters.
- D. Letters are used to make words, and words are used by God to make scripture.
- E. Breakdown of stanzas shown in table below:

Psalm 119				
	Hebrew	Hebrew Letter Name		
Stanza	Letter	KJV (1611)	Modern	Verses
1	א	Aleph	'Alef	1–8
2	ב	Beth	Beth	9–16
3	ג	Gimel	Gimel	17–24

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

4	ד	Daleth	Daleth	25–32
5	ה	He	He'	33–40
6	ו	Vau	Waw	41–48
7	ז	Zain	Zayin	49–56
8	ח	Cheth	Ḥeth	57–64
9	ט	Teth	Ṭeth	65–72
10	י	Jod	Yudh	73–80
11	כ	Caph	Kaf	81–88
12	ל	Lamed	Lamedh	89–96
13	מ	Mem	Mem	97–104
14	נ	Nun	Nun	105–12
15	ס	Samech	Samekh	113–20
16	ע	Ain	'Ayin	121–28
17	פ	Pe	Pe'	129–36
18	צ	Tzaddi	Ṣadheh	137–44
19	ק	Koph	Quf	145–52
20	ר	Resh	Resh	153–60
21	ש	Schin	Śin / Shin	161–68
22	ת	Tau	Taw	169–76

F. 12 words used as parallels to the word of God in Psalm 119:

- Law
- Testimonies
- Ways
- Precepts
- Statutes
- Commandments
- Judgments
- Thy word
- Faithfulness (v. 90)
- Ordinances
- Surety (v. 122)
- Thy name (v. 132)

XIII. Chart Showing Chances of 13 Various Prophecies Being Fulfilled

Reference	Prophecy	Chance of Fulfillment
Daniel 9:25-25	Timing of the Crucifixion	1 in 100,000 (10 ⁵)
Micah 5:2	Birth in Bethlehem	1 in 100,000 (10 ⁵)
Zechariah 11:12-13	Judas' Betrayal	1 in 100,000,000,000 (10 ¹¹)
Psalm 22 and 34:20; Zechariah 12:10	Jesus Death by Crucifixion	1 in 10,000,000,000,000 (10 ¹³)

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Isaiah 44:28; 45:1; 45:13	Babylon Destroyed by Cyrus	1 in 1,000,000,000,000,000 (10 ¹⁵)
Isaiah 13:17-22; Jeremiah 51:26, 43	Doom of Babylon	1 in 1,000,000,000 (10 ⁹)
Jeremiah 31:38-40	Israel's Rebirth and 9 Cities	1 in 1,000,000,000,000,000,000 (10 ¹⁸)
Deuteronomy 29; Isaiah 11:11-13; Jeremiah 25:11; Hosea 3:4-5; Luke 21:23-24	Israel's Captivity, Dispersion, and Re-establishment	1 in 100,000,000,000,000,000,000 (10 ²⁰)
Jeremiah 49:15-20; Ezekiel 25:12-14	Edom to become Barren	1 in 100,000 (10 ⁵)
1 Kings 16:33-34	Rebuilding of Jericho	1 in 10,000,000 (10 ⁷)
2 Kings 2:3-11	Elijah's Departure	1 in 1,000,000,000 (10 ⁹)
2 Chronicles 20	Jehoshaphat's Victory	1 in 100,000,000 (10 ⁸)
1 Kings 13:2; 2 Kings 23:15-18	Josiah Burning Bones	1 in 10,000,000,000,000 (10 ¹³)

XIV. Mathematical Illustration that Jesus is the Messiah

- A. Excerpt from: Is Jesus for Real? Mathematical Proof!
- B. Original source: <http://www.bibletimelines.net/article/24/articles-brief-and-to-the-point/jesus-is-he-really-the-messiah>
- C. The fact that Jesus was born and actually did live is not what this page is all about. What this page is attempting to answer is, "Was the Jesus of the Bible who He claimed He was? Was He really God's Son? Was Jesus the Messiah?"
- D. There are over 300 prophecies listed below that point directly to the Messiah. Here is an example of just 8:
 - The time of His birth (see the Daniel 8 & 9 Timeline).
 - He would be born in Bethlehem. (Micah 5:2)
 - He would be born of a virgin. (Isaiah 7:14)
 - He would be betrayed for 30 pieces of silver. (Zechariah 11:12)
 - He would be mocked. (Psalm 22:7,8)
 - He would be crucified. (John 3:14)
 - He would be pierced. (Psalms 22:16)
 - He would die with the wicked, but He would be buried with the rich. (Isaiah 53:9)
- E. Mathematics & Astronomy Professor Peter W. Stoner has made the statement that the chances of just 8 prophecies (like these) coming true by sheer chance is 1 in 10¹⁷ (100,000,000,000,000,000). That would be equivalent to covering the whole state of Texas with silver dollars two feet deep and then expecting a blindfolded man to walk across the state and on the very first try find the ONE coin you marked (roughly equivalent to the Province of Ontario being 1.5 feet deep).
- F. And if we were to add only 8 more similar prophecies, for a total of 16, the odds would be 1 x 10²⁸ x 10¹⁷ – or 1 in 10⁴⁵
- G. (1,000)
- H. Using the same type of illustration as above, if we were to press this many silver dollars (10⁴⁵) into a ball and place the center of this ball where the center of our Sun is, this silver ball's outer edge would be in approximately the same area as the orbit of Neptune (almost

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

to Pluto.). One man fulfilling all 16 prophecies by sheer chance would be like sending a blind-folded person out to find one specific silver dollar that has been marked and has been mixed up somewhere in this huge ball and actually finding it the first time! (Keep in mind that this is a three-dimensional BALL, not a disk like our Solar System.)

- I. Professor Stoner gives us yet another illustration, but this time, because a silver dollar, and even the atom, would be too large for this one he chose to use just the electron that orbits the nucleus of the atom.
- J. The electron is one of the smallest particles of matter known to man. It is so small that if you lined up 2.5×10^{15} (2,500,000,000,000,000) single file you would end up with a line that is only 1 inch long. (If we were going to count the electrons in this line one inch long, and counted 250 each minute, and if we counted day and night, it would take us 19,000,000 years to count just the one-inch line of electrons.)
- K. Now back to Stoner's illustration. Using only 48 of the prophecies that Jesus fulfilled it was calculated that the chances of one person fulfilling these by sheer chance would be 1 in 10^{157} .
- L. To help us understand how huge this number is he suggested taking 10^{157} electrons and pressing them into a solid ball. This ball, made entirely of electrons, would pretty much fill, not just our galaxy, but the entire known universe. (At the time Stoner's book was written the universe was known to be at least 6 billion light years in all directions. Stoner's known universe would need to be filled about 10,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 times.) Once again, we would mark just one electron, blindfold a man and send him out to find that one electron.
- M. Peter Stoner then states, "To the extent, then, that we know this blindfolded man cannot pick out the marked electron, we know that the Bible is inspired. This is not merely evidence. It is proof of the Bible's inspiration by God – proof so definite that the universe is not large enough to hold the evidence."
- N. Professor Stoner then made the comment that, "Any man who rejects Christ as the Son of God is rejecting a fact proved perhaps more absolutely than any other fact in the world."
- O. (For more details on these illustrations and others by Professor Peter W. Stoner, you can read just his chapter entitled, The Christ of Prophecy, or you can read his entire book, Science Speaks, online.)
- P. And the fact that Jesus had no control over things like where, when and how He was born, or where He was buried just adds to the available evidence that He did not just work to make sure that all of the prophecies were fulfilled so that people would believe Him to be the Messiah.

XV. Messianic Prophecies Fulfilled

365 MESSIANIC PROPHECIES FULFILLED			
	O.T. Prophecy Location	Prophecy Description	N. T. Fulfillment by Jesus
1	Genesis 3:15	Seed of a woman (virgin birth)	Luke 1:35; Matthew 1:18-20
2	Genesis 3:15	He will bruise Satan's head	Hebrews 2:14; 1 John 3:18
3	Genesis 5:24	The bodily ascension to heaven illustrated	Mark 6:19
4	Genesis 9:26-27	The God of Shem will be the Son of Shem	Luke 3:36

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

5	Genesis 12:3	As Abraham's seed will bless all nations	Acts 3:25, 26
6	Genesis 12:7	The Promise made to Abraham's Seed	Galatians 3:16
7	Genesis 14:18	A priest after Melchizedek	Hebrews 6:20
8	Genesis 14:18	A King also	Hebrews 7:2
9	Genesis 14:18	The Last Supper foreshadowed	Matthew 26:26-29
10	Genesis 17:19	The Seed of Isaac	Romans 9:7
11	Genesis 21:1	Seed of Isaac	Romans 9:7; Hebrews 11:18
12	Genesis 22:8	The Lamb of God promised	John 1:29
13	Genesis 22:18	As Isaac's seed will bless all nations	Galatians 3:16
14	Genesis 26:2-5	The Seed of Isaac promised as the Redeemer	Hebrews 11:18
15	Genesis 49:10	The time of His coming	Luke 2:1-7; Galatians 4:4
16	Genesis 49:10	The Seed of Judah	Luke 3:33
17	Genesis 49:10	Called Shiloh or One Sent	John 17:3
18	Genesis 49:10	To come before Judah lost identity	John 11:47-52
19	Genesis 49:10	To Him shall the obedience of the people be	John 10:16
20	Exodus 3:13, 14	The Great "I Am"	John 4:26
21	Exodus 12:5	A Lamb without blemish	1 Peter 1:19
22	Exodus 12:13	The blood of the Lamb saves Romans wrath	Romans 5:8
23	Exodus 12:21-27	Christ is our Passover	1 Corinthians 5:7
24	Exodus 12:46	Not a bone of the Lamb to be broken	John 19:31-36
25	Exodus 13:2	Blessing to first born son	Luke 2:23
26	Exodus 15:2	His exaltation predicted as Yeshua	Acts 7:55, 56
27	Exodus 15:11	His Character-Holiness	Luke 1:35; Acts 4:27
28	Exodus 17:6	The Spiritual Rock of Israel	1 Corinthians 10:4
29	Exodus 33:19	His Character-Merciful	Luke 1:72
30	Leviticus 14:11	The leper cleansed-Sign to priesthood	Luke 5:12-14; Acts 6:7
31	Leviticus 16:15-17	Prefigures Christ's once-for-all death	Hebrews 9:7-14
32	Leviticus 16:27	Suffering outside the Camp	Matthew 27:33; Hebrews 13:11, 12
33	Leviticus 17:11	The Blood-the life of the flesh	Matthew 26:28; Mark 10:45
34	Leviticus 17:11	It is the blood that makes atonement	1 John 3:14-18
35	Leviticus 23:36-37	The Drink-offering: "If any man thirst"	John 19:31-36
36	Numbers 9:12	Not a bone of Him broken	John 19:31-36
37	Numbers 21:9	The serpent on a pole-Christ lifted up	John 3:14-18
38	Numbers 24:8	Flight to Egypt	Matthew 2:14
39	Numbers 24:17	Time: "I shall see him, but not now"	Galatians 4:4

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

40	Numbers 24:17-19	A star out of Jacob	Matthew 2:2; Luke 1:33, 78; Revelation 22:16
41	Deuteronomy 18:15	“This is of a truth that prophet”	John 6:14
42	Deuteronomy 18:15-16	“Had ye believed Moses ye would believe me.”	John 5:45-47
43	Deuteronomy 18:18	Sent by the Father to speak His word	John 8:28, 29
44	Deuteronomy 18:19	Whoever will not hear must bear his sin	John 12:15
45	Deuteronomy 21:13	As a prophet	John 6:14; 7:40; Acts 3:22, 23
46	Deuteronomy 21:23	Cursed is he that hangs on a tree	Galatians 3:10-13
47	Ruth 4:4-9	“Christ our kinsman has redeemed us”	Ephesians 1:3-7
48	1 Samuel 2:10	Shall be an anointed King to the Lord	Matthew 28:18; John 12:15
49	2 Samuel 7:12	David’s Seed	Matthew 1:1
50	2 Samuel 7:14	The Son of God	Luke 1:32
51	2 Samuel 7:16	David’s house established forever	Luke 3:31; Rev 22:16
52	2 Samuel 23:2	would be the “Rock	1 Corinthians 10:4
53	2 Samuel 23:2	would be as the “light of the morning	Revelation 22:16
54	2 Kings 2:11	The bodily ascension to heaven illustrated	Luke 24:51
55	1 Chronicles 17:11	David’s Seed	Matthew 1:1; 9:27
56	1 Chronicles 17:12, 13	To reign on David’s throne forever	Luke 1:32, 33
57	1 Chronicles 17:13	“I will be His Father, He my Son”	Hebrews 1:5
58	Job 19:23-27	The Resurrection predicted	John 5:24-29
59	Psalms 2:1-3	The enmity of kings foreordained	Acts 4:25-28
60	Psalms 2:2	To own the title Anointed (Christ)	Acts 2:36
61	Psalms 2:6	His Character-Holiness	John 8:46; Rev 3:7
62	Psalms 2:6	To own the title King	Matthew 2:2
63	Psalms 2:7	Declared the Beloved Son	Matthew 3:17
64	Psalms 2:7-8	The Crucifixion and Resurrection intimated	Acts 13:29-33
65	Psalms 2:12	Life comes through faith in Him	John 20:31
66	Psalms 8:2	The mouths of babes perfect His praise	Matthew 21:16
67	Psalms 8:5, 6	His humiliation and exaltation	Luke 24:50-53; 1 Corinthians 15:27
68	Psalms 16:10	Was not to see corruption	Acts 2:31
69	Psalms 16:9-11	Was to arise from the dead	John 20:9
70	Psalms 17:15	The resurrection predicted	Luke 24:6
71	Psalms 22:1	Forsaken because of sins of others	2 Corinthians 5:21
72	Psalms 22:1	Words spoken from Calvary “My God”	Mark 15:34
73	Psalms 22:2	Darkness upon Calvary	Matthew 27:45
74	Psalms 22:7	They shoot out the lip and shake the head	Matthew 27:39

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

75	Psalms 22:8	“ He trusted in God let Him deliver Him”	Matthew 27:43
76	Psalms 22:9	Born the Savior	Luke 2:7
77	Psalms 22:14	Died of a broken (ruptured) heart	John 19:34
78	Psalms 22:14-15	Suffered agony on Calvary	Mark 15:34-37
79	Psalms 22:15	He thirsted	John 19:28
80	Psalms 22:16	They pierced His hands and His feet	John 19:34, 37; 20:27
81	Psalms 22:17-18	Stripped Him before the stares of men	Luke 23:34, 35
82	Psalms 22:18	They parted His garments	John 19:23, 24
83	Psalms 22:20-21	He committed Himself to God	Luke 23:46
84	Psalms 22:20-21	Satanic power bruising the Redeemer’s heel	Hebrews 2:14
85	Psalms 22:22	His Resurrection declared	John 20:17
86	Psalms 22:27	He shall be the governor of the nations	Colossians 1:16
87	Psalms 22:31	“It is finished”	John 19:30
88	Psalms 23:1	“I am the Good Shepherd”	John 10:11
89	Psalms 24:3	His exaltation predicted	Acts 1:11; Phil 2:9
90	Psalms 27:12	Accused by false witnesses	Matthew 26:60, 61; Mark 14:57, 58
91	Psalms 30:3	His resurrection predicted	Acts 2:32
92	Psalms 31:5	“Into thy hands I commit my spirit”	Luke 23:46
93	Psalms 31:11	His acquaintances fled from Him	Mark 14:50
94	Psalms 31:13	They took counsel to put Him to death	John 11:53
95	Psalms 31:14-15	“ He trusted in God let Him deliver him”	Matthew 27:43
96	Psalms 34:20	Not a bone of Him broken	John 19:31-36
97	Psalms 35:11	False witnesses rose up against Him	Matthew 26:59
98	Psalms 35:19	He was hated without a cause	John 15:25
99	Psalms 38:11	His friends stood afar off	Luke 23:49
100	Psalms 40:2-5	The joy of His resurrection predicted	John 20:20
101	Psalms 40:6-8	His delight-the will of the Father	John 4:34
102	Psalms 40:9	He was to preach the Righteousness in Israel	Matthew 4:17
103	Psalms 40:14	Confronted by adversaries in the Garden	John 18:1-40
104	Psalms 41:9	Betrayed by a familiar friend	John 13:18
105	Psalms 45:2	Words of Grace come from His lips	Luke 4:22
106	Psalms 45:6	To own the title God or Elohim	Hebrews 1:8
107	Psalms 45:7	A special anointing by the Holy Spirit	Matthew 3:16; Hebrews 1:9
108	Psalms 45:7, 8	Called the Christ (Messiah or Anointed)	Luke 2:11
109	Psalms 49:15	His Resurrection	Acts 2:27; 13:35; Mark 16:6

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

110	Psalms 55:12-14	Betrayed by a friend; not an enemy	John 13:18
111	Psalms 55:15	Unrepentant death of the Betrayer	Matthew 27:3-5; Acts 1:16-19
112	Psalms 68:18	To give gifts to men	Ephesians 4:7-16
113	Psalms 68:18	Ascended into Heaven	Luke 24:51
114	Psalms 69:4	Hated without a cause	John 15:25
115	Psalms 69:8	A stranger to own brethren	Luke 8:20, 21
116	Psalms 69:9	Zealous for the Lord's House	John 2:17
117	Psalms 69:14-20	Messiah's anguish of soul before crucifixion	Matthew 26:36-45
118	Psalms 69:20	"My soul is exceeding sorrowful"	Matthew 26:38
119	Psalms 69:21	Given vinegar in thirst	Matthew 27:34
120	Psalms 69:26	The Savior given and smitten by God	John 17:4; 18:11
121	Psalms 72:10-11	Great persons were to visit Him	Matthew 2:1-11
122	Psalms 72:16	The corn of wheat to fall into the Ground	John 12:24
123	Psalms 72:17	His name (Yinon) will produce offspring	John 1:12, 13
124	Psalms 72:17	All nations shall be blessed by Him	Acts 2:11, 12, 41
125	Psalms 78:1-2	He would teach in parables	Matthew 13:34-35
126	Psalms 78:2	To speak the Wisdom of God with authority	Matthew 7:29
127	Psalms 88:8	They stood afar off and watched	Luke 23:49
128	Psalms 89:26	Messiah will call God His Father	Matthew 11:27
129	Psalms 89:27	Emmanuel to be higher than earthly kings	Luke 1:32, 33
130	Psalms 89:35-37	David's Seed (throne & kingdom) endure forever	Luke 1:32, 33
131	Psalms 89:36-37	His character-Faithfulness	Revelation 1:5
132	Psalms 90:2	He is from everlasting (Micah 5:2)	John 1:1
133	Psalms 91:11-12	Identified as Messianic; used to tempt Christ	Luke 4:10-11
134	Psalms 97:9	His exaltation predicted	Acts 1:11; Ephesians 1:20
135	Psalms 100:5	His character-Goodness	Matthew 19:16, 17
136	Psalms 102:1-11	The Suffering and Reproach of Calvary	John 21:16-30
137	Psalms 102:16	Son of Man comes in Glory	Luke 21:24; Revelation 12:5-10
138	Psalms 102:25-27	Messiah is the Pre-existent Son	Hebrews 1:10-12
139	Psalms 109:4	Prays for His enemies	Luke 23:34
140	Psalms 109:7-8	Another to succeed Judas	Acts 1:16-20
141	Psalms 109:25	Ridiculed	Matthew 27:39
142	Psalms 110:1	Son of David	Matthew 22:43
143	Psalms 110:1	To ascend to the right-hand of the Father	Mark 16:19

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

144	Psalms 110:1	David's son called Lord	Matthew 22:44, 45
145	Psalms 110:4	A priest after Melchizedek's order	Hebrews 6:20
146	Psalms 112:4	His character=Compassionate; Gracious; et al	Matthew 9:36
147	Psalms 118:17-18	Messiah's Resurrection assured	Luke 24:5-7;1 Corinthians 15:20
148	Psalms 118:22-23	The rejected stone is Head of the corner	Matthew 21:42, 43
149	Psalms 118:26	The Blessed One presented to Israel	Matthew 21:9
150	Psalms 118:26	To come while Temple standing	Matthew 21:12-15
151	Psalms 132:11	The Seed of David (the fruit of His Body)	Luke 1:32
152	Psalms 138:1-6	The supremacy of David's Seed amazes kings	Matthew 2:2-6
153	Psalms 147:3, 6	The earthly ministry of Christ described	Luke 4:18
154	Psalms 1:23	He will send the Spirit of God	John 16:7
155	Proverbs 8:22-23	The Messiah would be from everlasting	John 17:5
156	Proverbs 30:4	Declared to be the Son of God	John 3:13; Romans 1:2- 4; 10:6-9; 2 Peter 1:17
157	Song of Solomon 5:16	The altogether lovely One	John 1:17
158	Isaiah 2:2-4	Repentance for the nations	Luke 24:47
159	Isaiah 4:2	Messiah reigning	Luke 1:33
160	Isaiah 5:1-6	Son of God's vineyard: a parable of judgment	Matthew 20:1-34
161	Isaiah 6:1	When Isaiah saw His glory	John 12:40-41
162	Isaiah 6:9-10	Parables fall on deaf ears	Matthew 13:13-15
163	Isaiah 6:9-12	Blinded to Christ and deaf to His words	Acts 28:23-29
164	Isaiah 7:14	To be born of a virgin	Luke 1:35
165	Isaiah 7:14	To be Emmanuel-God with us	Matthew 1:18-23
166	Isaiah 8:8	Called Emmanuel	Matthew 28:20
167	Isaiah 8:14	A stone of stumbling - a Rock of offense	1 Peter 2:8
168	Isaiah 9:1, 2	His ministry to begin in Galilee	Matthew 4:12-17
169	Isaiah 9:6	A child born-Humanity	Luke 1:31
170	Isaiah 9:6	A Son given-Deity	Luke 1:32; John 1:14; 1 Tim 3:16
171	Isaiah 9:6	Declared to be the Son of God with power	Romans 1:3, 4
172	Isaiah 9:6	The Wonderful One (Peleh)	Luke 4:22
173	Isaiah 9:6	The Counselor (Yaatz)	Matthew 13:54
174	Isaiah 9:6	The Mighty God (El Gibor)	Matthew 11:20
175	Isaiah 9:6	The Everlasting Father (Avi Adth)	John 8:58
176	Isaiah 9:6	The Prince of Peace (Sar Shalom)	John 16:33
177	Isaiah 9:7	To establish an everlasting kingdom	Luke 1:32-33

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

178	Isaiah 9:7	His Character-Just	John 5:30
179	Isaiah 9:7	No end to his Government; Throne and Peace	Luke 1:32-33
180	Isaiah 11:1	Called a Nazarene-the Branch (Netzer)	Matthew 2:23
181	Isaiah 11:1	A rod out of Jesse-Son of Jesse	Luke 3:23, 32
182	Isaiah 11:2	The anointed One by the Spirit	Matthew 3:16, 17
183	Isaiah 11:2	His Character=Wisdom; Understanding; et al	John 4:4-26
184	Isaiah 11:4	His Character=Truth	John 14:6
185	Isaiah 11:10	The Gentiles seek Him	John 12:18-21
186	Isaiah 12:2	Called Jesus-Yeshua (salvation)	Matthew 1:21
187	Isaiah 16:4-5	Reigning in mercy	Luke 1:31-33
188	Isaiah 22:21-25	Peg in a sure place	Revelation 3:7
189	Isaiah 25:8	The Resurrection predicted	I Corinthians 15:54
190	Isaiah 26:19	His power of Resurrection predicted	John 11:43, 44
191	Isaiah 28:16	The Messiah is the precious corner stone	Acts 4:11-12
192	Isaiah 29:13	He indicated hypocritical obedience to His Word	Matthew 15:7-9
193	Isaiah 29:14	The wise are confounded by the Word	I Corinthians 1:18-31
194	Isaiah 32:2	A Refuge-A man shall be a hiding place	Matthew 23:37
195	Isaiah 33:22	Son of the Highest	Luke 1:32; 1 Timothy 1:17; 6:15
196	Isaiah 35:4	He will come and save you	Matthew 1:21
197	Isaiah 35:5	To have a ministry of miracles	Matthew 11:4-6
198	Isaiah 40:3-4	Preceded by forerunner	John 1:23
199	Isaiah 40:9	“Behold your God”	John 1:36;19:14
200	Isaiah 40:11	A shepherd-compassionate life-giver	John 10:10-18
201	Isaiah 42:1-4	The Servant-as a faithful patient redeemer	Matthew 12:18-21
202	Isaiah 42:2	Meek and lowly	Matthew 11:28-30
203	Isaiah 42:3	He brings hope for the hopeless	John 4:1-54
204	Isaiah 42:4	The nations shall wait on His teachings	John 12:20-26
205	Isaiah 42:6	The Light (salvation) of the Gentiles	Luke 2:32
206	Isaiah 42:1, 6	His is a Worldwide compassion	Matthew 28:19, 20
207	Isaiah 42:7	Blind eyes opened	John 9:25-38
208	Isaiah 42:13-25	Messiah’s actions at His second coming	All of Revelation
209	Isaiah 43:11	He is the only Savior	Acts 4:12
210	Isaiah 44:3	He will send the Spirit of God	John 16:7, 13
211	Isaiah 45:23	He will be the Judge	John 5:22; Romans 14:11
212	Isaiah 48:12	The First and the Last	John 1:30;Rev 1:8, 17

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

213	Isaiah 48:17	He came as a Teacher	John 3:2
214	Isaiah 49:1	Called from the womb-His humanity	Matthew 1:18
215	Isaiah 49:5	A Servant from the womb	Luke 1:31; Phil. 2:7
216	Isaiah 49:6	He is Salvation for Israel	Luke 2:29-32
217	Isaiah 49:6	He is the Light of the Gentiles	Acts 13:47
218	Isaiah 49:6	He is Salvation unto the ends of the earth	Acts 15:7-18
219	Isaiah 49:7	He is despised of the Nation	John 8:48-49
220	Isaiah 50:3	Heaven is clothed in black at His humiliation	Luke 23:44, 45
221	Isaiah 50:4	He is a learned counselor for the weary	Matthew 11:28-29
222	Isaiah 50:5	The Servant bound willingly to obedience	Matthew 26:39
223	Isaiah 50:6	"I gave my back to the smiters"	Matthew 27:26
224	Isaiah 50:6	He was smitten on the cheeks	Matthew 26:67
225	Isaiah 50:6	He was spat upon	Matthew 27:30
226	Isaiah 52:4-5	Suffered vicariously	Mark 15:3-4, 27, 28; Luke 23:1-25, 32-34
227	Isaiah 52:7	To publish good tidings of peace	Luke 4:14-15
228	Isaiah 52:13	The Servant exalted	Acts 1:8-11; Ephesians 1:19-22
229	Isaiah 52:13	Behold My Servant	Matthew 17:5; Phil 2:5-8
230	Isaiah 52:14	The Servant shockingly abused	Luke 18:31-34; Matthew 26:67-68
231	Isaiah 52:15	Nations startled by message of the Servant	Romans 15:18-21
232	Isaiah 52:15	His blood shed to make atonement for all	Revelation 1:5
233	Isaiah 53:1	His people would not believe Him	John 12:37-38
234	Isaiah 53:2	He would grow up in a poor family	Luke 2:7
235	Isaiah 53:2	Appearance of an ordinary man	Philippians 2:7-8
236	Isaiah 53:3	Despised	Luke 4:28-29
237	Isaiah 53:3	Rejected	Matthew 27:21-23
238	Isaiah 53:3	Great sorrow and grief	Luke 19:41-42
239	Isaiah 53:3	Men hide from being associated with Him	Mark 14:50-52
240	Isaiah 53:4	He would have a healing ministry	Luke 6:17-19
241	Isaiah 53:4	He would bear the sins of the world	1 Pet 2:24
242	Isaiah 53:4	Thought to be cursed by God	Matthew 27:41-43
243	Isaiah 53:5	Bears penalty for mankind's transgressions	Luke 23:33
244	Isaiah 53:5	His sacrifice would provide peace between man and God	Colossians 1:20
245	Isaiah 53:5	His back would be whipped	Matthew 27:26

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

246	Isaiah 53:6	He would be the sin-bearer for all mankind	Galatians 1:4
247	Isaiah 53:6	God's will that He bear sin for all mankind	1 John 4:10
248	Isaiah 53:7	Oppressed and afflicted	Matthew 27:27-31
249	Isaiah 53:7	Silent before his accusers	Matthew 27:12-14
250	Isaiah 53:7	Sacrificial lamb	John 1:29
251	Isaiah 53:8	Confined and persecuted	Matthew 26:47-27:31
252	Isaiah 53:8	He would be judged	John 18:13-22
253	Isaiah 53:8	Killed	Matthew 27:35
254	Isaiah 53:8	Dies for the sins of the world	1 John 2:2
255	Isaiah 53:9	Buried in a rich man's grave	Matthew 27:57
256	Isaiah 53:9	Innocent and had done no violence	Mark 15:3
257	Isaiah 53:9	No deceit in his mouth	John 18:38
258	Isaiah 53:10	God's will that He die for mankind	John 18:11
259	Isaiah 53:10	An offering for sin	Matthew 20:28
260	Isaiah 53:10	Resurrected and live forever	Mark 16:16
261	Isaiah 53:10	He would prosper	John 17:1-5
262	Isaiah 53:11	God fully satisfied with His suffering	John 12:27
263	Isaiah 53:11	God's servant	Romans 5:18-19
264	Isaiah 53:11	He would justify man before God	Romans 5:8-9
265	Isaiah 53:11	The sin-bearer for all mankind	Hebrews 9:28
266	Isaiah 53:12	Exalted by God because of his sacrifice	Matthew 28:18
267	Isaiah 53:12	He would give up his life to save mankind	Luke 23:46
268	Isaiah 53:12	Grouped with criminals	Luke 23:32
269	Isaiah 53:12	Sin-bearer for all mankind	2 Corinthians 5:21
270	Isaiah 53:12	Intercede to God in behalf of mankind	Luke 23:34
271	Isaiah 55:1	Everyone come who is thirsty	(New Testament)
272	Isaiah 55:3	Resurrected by God	Acts 13:34
273	Isaiah 55:4	A witness	John 18:37
274	Isaiah 55:5	Foreign nations come to God	(all of Acts)
275	Isaiah 59:15-16	He would come to provide salvation	John 6:40
276	Isaiah 59:15-16	Intercessor between man and God	Matthew 10:32
277	Isaiah 59:20	He would come to Zion as their Redeemer	Luke 2:38
278	Isaiah 60:1-3	Nations walk in the light	Luke 2:32
279	Isaiah 61:1-2	The Spirit of God upon him	Matthew 3:16-17
280	Isaiah 61:1-2	The Messiah would preach the good news	Luke 4:17-21
281	Isaiah 61:1-2	Provide freedom from the bondage of sin and death	John 8:31-32
282	Isaiah 61:1-2	Proclaim a period of grace	John 5:24

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

283	Isaiah 62:1-2	Called by an new name	Luke 2:32; Revelation 3:12
284	Isaiah 62:11	Thy King Cometh-Entered Jerusalem on Colt	Matthew 21:7
285	Isaiah 63:1-3	A vesture dipped in blood	Revelation 19:13
286	Isaiah 63:8-9	Afflicted with the afflicted	Matthew 25:34-40
287	Isaiah 65:9	The elect shall inherit	Romans 11:5-7; Hebrews 7:14; Revelation 5:5
288	Isaiah 65:17-25	New heaven/New Earth	2 Peter 3:13; Revelation 21:1
289	Isaiah 66:18-19	All nations come to God	New Testament
290	Jeremiah 23:5-6	Descendant of David	Luke 3:23-31
291	Jeremiah 23:5-6	The Messiah would be God	John 13:13
292	Jeremiah 23:5-6	The Messiah would be both God and Man	1 Timothy 3:16
293	Jeremiah 30:9	Born a King	John 18:37; Revelation 1:5
294	Jeremiah 31:15	Massacre of infants	Matthew 2:16-18
295	Jeremiah 31:22	Born of a virgin	Matthew 1:18-20
296	Jeremiah 31:31	The Messiah would be the new covenant	Matthew 26:28
297	Jeremiah 33:14-15	Descendant of David	Luke 3:23-31
298	Ezekiel 17:22-24	Descendant of David	Luke 3:23-31
299	Ezekiel 21:26-27	The humble exalted	Luke 1:52
300	Ezekiel 34:23-24	Descendant of David	Matthew 1:1
301	Daniel 2:34-35	Stone cut without hands	Acts 4:10-12
302	Daniel 2:44-45	His Kingdom Triumphant	Luke 1:33; 1 Corinthians 15:24; Revelation 11:15
303	Daniel 7:13-14	He would ascend into heaven	Acts 1:9-11
304	Daniel 7:13-14	Highly exalted	Ephesians 1:20-22
305	Daniel 7:13-14	His dominion would be everlasting	Luke 1:31-33
306	Daniel 7:27	Kingdom for the Saints	Luke 1:33; 1 Corinthians 15:24; Revelation 11:15
307	Daniel 9:24	To make an end to sins	Galatians 1:3-5
308	Daniel 9:24	He would be holy	Luke 1:35
309	Daniel 9:25	Announced to his people 483 years to the exact day after the decree to rebuild the city of Jerusalem	John 12:12-13
310	Daniel 9:26	Killed	Matthew 27:35
311	Daniel 9:26	Die for the sins of the world	Hebrews 2:9
312	Daniel 9:26	Killed before the destruction of the temple	Matthew 27:50-51
313	Daniel 10:5-6	Messiah in a glorified state	Revelation 1:13-16

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

314	Hosea 3:5	Israel restored	John 18:37; Romans 11:25-27
315	Hosea 11:1; Numbers 24:8	Flight to Egypt	Matthew 2:14
316	Hosea 13:14	He would defeat death	1 Corinthians 15:55-57
317	Joel 2:28-32	Promise of the Spirit	Acts 2:17-21; Romans 10:13
318	Joel 2:32	Offer salvation to all mankind	Romans 10:12-13
319	Micah 2:12-13	Israel Regathered	John 10:14, 26
320	Micah 4:1-8	The Kingdom established - place of Birth Bethlehem	Luke 1:33; Matthew 2:1; Luke 2:4, 10, 11
321	Micah 5:2	Born in Bethlehem	Matthew 2:1-2
322	Micah 5:2	God's servant	John 15:10
323	Micah 5:2	from everlasting	John 8:58
324	Haggai 2:6-9	He would visit the second Temple	Luke 2:27-32
325	Haggai 2:23	Descendant of Zerubbabel	Luke 3:23-27
326	Joel 2:28-32	Promise of the Spirit	Acts 2:17-21; Romans 10:13
327	Amos 8:9	The Sun Darkened	Matthew 24:29; Acts 2:20; Revelation 6:12
328	Amos 9:11-12	Restoration of tabernacle	Acts 14:16-18
329	Habakkuk 2:14	Earth filled with knowledge of the glory of the Lord	Romans 11:26; Revelation 21:23-26
330	Zechariah 2:10-13	The Lamb on the Throne	Revelation 5:13; 6:9; 21:24
331	Zechariah 3:8	God's servant	John 17:4
332	Zechariah 6:12-13	Priest and King	Hebrews 8:1
333	Zechariah 9:9	Greeted with rejoicing in Jerusalem	Matthew 21:8-10
334	Zechariah 9:9	Beheld as King	John 12:12-13
335	Zechariah 9:9	The Messiah would be just	John 5:30
336	Zechariah 9:9	The Messiah would bring salvation	Luke 19:10
337	Zechariah 9:9	The Messiah would be humble	Matthew 11:29
338	Zechariah 9:9	Presented to Jerusalem riding on a donkey	Matthew 21:6-9
339	Zechariah 10:4	The cornerstone	Ephesians 2:20
340	Zechariah 11:4-6	At His coming Israel to have unfit leaders	Matthew 23:1-4
341	Zechariah 11:4-6	Rejection causes God to remove His protection	Luke 19:41-44
342	Zechariah 11:4-6	Rejected in favor of another king	John 19:13-15
343	Zechariah 11:7	Ministry to "poor" the believing remnant	Matthew 9:35-36
344	Zechariah 11:8	Unbelief forces Messiah to reject them	Matthew 23:33
345	Zechariah 11:8	Despised	Matthew 27:20

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

346	Zechariah 11:9	Stops ministering to the those who rejected Him	Matthew 13:10-11
347	Zechariah 11:10-11	Rejection causes God to remove protection	Luke 19:41-44
348	Zechariah 11:10-11	The Messiah would be God	John 14:7
349	Zechariah 11:12-13	Betrayed for thirty pieces of silver	Matthew 26:14-15
350	Zechariah 11:12-13	Rejected	Matthew 26:14-15
351	Zechariah 11:12-13	Thirty pieces of silver thrown into the house of the Lord	Matthew 27:3-5
352	Zechariah 11:12-13	The Messiah would be God	John 12:45
353	Zechariah 12:10	The Messiah's body would be pierced	John 19:34-37
354	Zechariah 12:10	The Messiah would be both God and man	John 10:30
355	Zechariah 12:10	The Messiah would be rejected	John 1:11
356	Zechariah 13:7	God's will He die for mankind	John 18:11
357	Zechariah 13:7	A violent death	Matthew 27:35
358	Zechariah 13:7	Both God and man	John 14:9
359	Zechariah 13:7	Israel scattered as a result of rejecting Him	Matthew 26:31-56
360	Malachi 3:1	Messenger to prepare the way for Messiah	Matthew 11:10
361	Malachi 3:1	Sudden appearance at the temple	Mark 11:15-16
362	Malachi 3:1	Messenger of the new covenant	Luke 4:43
363	Malachi 3:3	Our Sins Are Purged	Luke 1:78; John 1:9; 12:46; 2 Peter 1:19; Revelation 2:28; 19:11-16; 22:16
364	Malachi 4:5	Forerunner in the spirit of Elijah	Matthew 3:1-2
365	Malachi 4:6	Forerunner would turn many to righteousness	Luke 1:16-17

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 3: The Revelation of the Word of God

I. The Word of God Reveals the Person of God

- A. Jesus, the Son of God – John 5:39
- B. God was manifest in the flesh – 1 Timothy 3:16
- C. God is known by his attributes
- D. God is known by the names he uses for himself

II. The Word of God Reveals the Power of God

- A. Gospel
- B. Romans 16:25-25 – Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,
- C. 26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:
- D. The Spirit of God speaks of Jesus Christ through the word of God
- E. John 16:13 – Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.
- F. 14 He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall shew it unto you.
- G. 15 All things that the Father hath are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall shew it unto you.

III. The Word of God Reveals the Mind of God

- A. Infinite
- B. Beyond finding out
- C. Omniscient
- D. God's thoughts not our thoughts – Isaiah 55:8-11

IV. The Word of God Reveals the Morality of God

- A. Love
- B. Beauty
- C. Holiness
- D. Just
- E. Truth
- F. Perfect
- G. Merciful
- H. Faithful
- I. Personal
- J. Good
- K. Gracious

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- L. Glorious
- M. Virtuous
- N. Longsuffering
- O. No Respect of Persons

V. **God's Attributes**

- A. Infinite
- B. Eternal
- C. Self-existent
- D. Self-sufficient
- E. Self-complete
- F. Omni-potent
- G. Omni-present
- H. Omniscient
- I. Omni-righteous
- J. Immutable – Never changing
- K. All-wise
- L. Creator
- M. Life-giver
- N. Sovereign
- O. Jealous
- P. Majestic
- Q. Foreknowledge

VI. **The Word of God Reveals the Things of God**

- A. Ephesians 4
- B. One Body
- C. One Spirit
- D. One Hope
- E. One Lord
- F. One Faith
- G. One Baptism
- H. One Grace to be saved – Gospel

VII. **The Word of God Reveals the Plan of God and the Purpose for His Creation**

- A. Fellowship
- B. Righteousness
- C. Faith
- D. Worship

VIII. **The Word of God Reveals the People of God**

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Jews
- B. Saints
- C. Apostles
- D. Prophets
- E. Evangelists
- F. Pastors
- G. Teachers

IX. The Word of God Reveals the Truth of God

- A. John 17:17 – Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.
- B. Men are sinners
- C. Men are under condemnation
- D. Men are saved by grace through faith
- E. Whosoever can be saved

X. The Prophecy of God

- A. "... he will shew you things to come" – John 16:13
- B. The future
- C. The events of the end times
- D. What heaven is like
- E. What hell is like
- F. What New Jerusalem is like
- G. What the Lake of Fire is like
- H. What the judgment is like

XI. 25 Names of God

NAMES OF GOD		
1	Abba	Galatians 4:6
2	Alpha and Omega	Revelation
3	The Ancient of Days	Daniel 7:9, 13, 22
4	The Most High	Psalms 7:17; Daniel 7:22
5	Christ	Matthew 16:16
6	The Holy One	Job 6:10; Psalm 16:10; Isaiah 57:15
7	Saviour	Isaiah 43:3
8	The LORD thy God	Isaiah 43:3
9	JEHOVAH	Exodus 6:3; Psalm 83:18; Isaiah 26:4
10	Jehovah-jireh	Genesis 22:14
11	Jehovah-nissi	Exodus 17:15
12	Jehovah-shalom	Judges 6:24; 2 Thessalonians 3:16
13	Eloi	Mark 15:34

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

14	The LORD of Hosts	1 Samuel 1:3; 7:26; Isaiah 54:5
15	Thy Maker	Isaiah 54:5
16	Thy Redeemer	Isaiah 54:5
17	The God of Israel	Jeremiah 43:10; 44:2
18	The Lord of Sabaoth	Romans 9:29; James 5:4
19	The Lord of glory	1 Corinthians 2:8; James 2:1
20	The King of glory	Psalms 24:7-10
21	I AM THAT I AM; I AM	Exodus 3:14
22	The LORD God of your fathers	Exodus 3:15
23	the God of Abraham	Exodus 3:15
24	The God of Isaac	Exodus 3:15
25	The God of Jacob	Exodus 3:15; 4:5

XII. 102 Names of Jesus

102 NAMES OF JESUS	
1	Advocate – 1 John 2:1
2	Almighty – Revelation 1:8
3	Alpha – Revelation 1:8
4	Amen – Revelation 3:14
5	Angel of the Lord – Genesis 16:7
6	Anointed One – Psalm 2:2
7	Apostle – Hebrews 3:1
8	Author and Perfecter of our Faith – Hebrews 12:2
9	Beginning – Revelation 21:6
10	Bishop of Souls – 1 Peter 2:25
11	Branch – Zechariah 3:8
12	Bread of Life – John 6:35,48
13	Bridegroom – Matthew 9:15
14	Carpenter – Mark 6:3
15	Chief Shepherd – 1 Peter 5:4
16	The Christ – Matthew 1:16
17	Comforter – Jeremiah 8:18
18	Consolation of Israel – Luke 2:25
19	Cornerstone – Ephesians 2:20
20	Dayspring – Luke 1:78
21	Day Star – 2 Peter 1:19
22	Deliverer – Romans 11:26
23	Desire of Nations – Haggai 2:7
24	Emmanuel – Matthew 1:23
25	End – Revelation 21:6

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

26	Everlasting Father – Isaiah 9:6
27	Faithful and True Witness – Revelation 3:14
28	First Fruits – 1 Corinthians 15:23
29	Foundation – Isaiah 28:16
30	Fountain – Zechariah 13:1
31	Friend of Sinners – Matthew 11:19
32	Gate for the Sheep – John 10:7
33	Gift of God – 2 Corinthians 9:15
34	God – John 1:1
35	Glory of God – Isaiah 60:1
36	Good Shepherd – John 10:11
37	Governor – Matthew 2:6
38	Great Shepherd – Hebrews 13:20
39	Guide – Psalm 48:14
40	Head of the Church – Colossians 1:18
41	High Priest – Hebrews 3:1
42	Holy One of Israel – Isaiah 41:14
43	Horn of Salvation – Luke 1:69
44	I Am – Exodus 3:14
45	Jehovah – Psalm 83:18
46	Jesus – Matthew 1:21
47	King of Israel – Matthew 27:42
48	King of Kings – 1 Timothy 6:15; Revelation 19:16
49	Lamb of God – John 1:29
50	Last Adam – 1 Corinthians 15:45
51	Life – John 11:25
52	Light of the World – John 8:12; John 9:5
53	Lion of the Tribe of Judah – Revelation 5:5
54	Lord of Lords – 1 Timothy 6:15; Revelation 19:16
55	Master – Matthew 23:8
56	Mediator – 1 Timothy 2:5
57	Messiah – John 1:41
58	Mighty God – Isaiah 9:6
59	Morning Star – Revelation 22:16
60	Nazarene – Matthew 2:23
61	Omega – Revelation 1:8
62	Passover Lamb – 1 Corinthians 5:7
63	Physician – Matthew 9:12
64	Potentate – 1 Timothy 6:15
65	Priest – Hebrews 4:15

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

66	Prince of Peace – Isaiah 9:6
67	Prophet – Acts 3:22
68	Propitiation – I John 2:2
69	Purifier – Malachi 3:3
70	Rabbi – John 1:49
71	Ransom – 1 Timothy 2:6
72	Redeemer – Isaiah 41:14
73	Refiner – Malachi 3:2
74	Refuge – Isaiah 25:4
75	Resurrection – John 11:25
76	Righteousness – Jeremiah 23:6
77	Rock – Deuteronomy 32:4
78	Root of David – Revelation 22:16
79	Rose of Sharon – Song of Solomon 2:1
80	Ruler of God’s Creation – Revelation 3:14
81	Sacrifice – Ephesians 5:2
82	Savior – 2 Samuel 22:47; Luke 1:47
83	Second Adam – 1 Corinthians 15:47
84	Seed of Abraham – Galatians 3:16
85	Seed of David – 2 Timothy 2:8
86	Seed of the Woman – Genesis 3:15
87	Servant – Isaiah 42:1
88	Shepherd – 1 Peter 2:25
89	Shiloh – Genesis 49:10
90	Son of David – Matthew 15:22
91	Son of God – Luke 1:35
92	Son of Man – Matthew 18:11
93	Son of Mary – Mark 6:3
94	Son of the Most High – Luke 1:32
95	Stone – Isaiah 28:16
96	Sun of Righteousness – Malachi 4:2
97	Teacher – Matthew 26:18
98	Truth – John 14:6
99	Way – John 14:6
100	Wonderful Counselor – Isaiah 9:6
101	Word – John 1:1
102	Vine – John 15:1

XIII. 37 Hebrew Old Testament Names for God

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

HEBREW OLD TESTAMENT NAMES FOR GOD		
1	EL	God (“mighty, strong, prominent”) used 250 times in the OT See Gen. 7:1, 28:3, 35:11; Nu. 23:22; Josh. 3:10; 2 Sam. 22:31, 32; Neh. 1:5, 9:32; Isa. 9:6; Ezek. 10:5.
2	ELOHIM	God (a plural noun, more than two, used with singular verbs); Elohim occurs 2,570 times in the OT, 32 times in Gen. 1. God as Creator, Preserver, Transcendent, Mighty and Strong. Eccl., Dan. Jonah use Elohim almost exclusively. See Gen. 17:7, 6:18, 9:15, 50:24; I Kings 8:23; Jer. 31:33; Isa. 40:1.
3	EL SHADDAI	God Almighty or “God All Sufficient.” 48 times in the OT, 31 times in Job. First used in Gen. 17:1, 2. (Gen. 31:29, 49:24, 25; Prov. 3:27; Micah 2:1; Isa. 60:15, 16, 66:10-13)
4	ADONAI	Lord in our English Bibles (Capital letter ‘L ‘, lower case, ‘ord’)
5	Jehovah	LORD in our English Bibles (all capitals). Yahweh is the covenant name of God. Occurs 6823 times in the OT First use Gen. 2:4 (Jehovah Elohim). From the verb “to be”, havah, similar to chavah (to live), “The Self-Existent One,” “I AM WHO I AM” or ‘I WILL BE WHO I WILL BE” as revealed to Moses at the burning bush, Ex.3.
6	JEHOVAH-JIREH	The Lord will Provide.” Gen. 22:14. From “jireh” (“to see” or “to provide,” or to “foresee” as a prophet.) God always provides, adequate when the times come.
7	JEHOVAH-ROPHE	“The Lord Who Heals” Ex. 15:22-26. From “rophe” (“to heal”); implies spiritual, emotional as well as physical healing. (Jer. 30:17, 3:22; Isa. 61:1) God heals body, soul and spirit; all levels of man’s being.
8	JEHOVAH-NISSI	“The Lord Our Banner.” Ex. 17:15. God on the battlefield, from word which means “to glisten,” “to lift up,” See Psalm 4:6.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

9	JEHOVAH-M'KADDESH	“The Lord Who Sanctifies” “To make whole, set apart for holiness.” The Lord says: “Consecrate yourselves and be holy, because I am the Lord your God. Keep my decrees and follow them. I am the Lord, who makes you holy.” (Leviticus 20:7-8)
10	JEHOVAH-SHALOM	“The Lord Our Peace” Judges 6:24. “Shalom” translated “peace” 170 times means “whole,” “finished,” “fulfilled,” “perfected.” Related to “well,” welfare.” Deut. 27:6; Dan. 5:26; I Kings 9:25 8:61; Gen. 15:16; Ex. 21:34, 22:5, 6; Lev. 7:11-21. Shalom means that kind of peace that results from being a whole person in right relationship to God and to one’s fellow man.
11	SHEPHERD	Psa. 23, 79:13, 95:7, 80:1, 100:3; Gen. 49:24; Isa. 40:11.
12	JUDGE	Psa. 7:8, 96:13.
13	JEHOVAH ELOHIM	“LORD God” Gen. 2:4; Judges 5:3; Isa. 17:6; Zeph. 2:9; Psa. 59:5, etc.
14	JEHOVAH-TSIDKENU	“The Lord Our Righteousness” Jer. 23:5, 6, 33:16. From “tsidek” (straight, stiff, balanced – as on scales – full weight, justice, right, righteous, declared innocent.) God our Righteousness.
15	JEHOVAH-ROHI	“The Lord Our Shepherd” Psa. 23, from “ro’eh” (to pasture).
16	JEHOVAH-SHAMMAH	“The Lord is There” (Ezek. 48:35).
17	JEHOVAH-SABAOTH	“The Lord of Hosts” The commander of the angelic host and the armies of God. Isa. 1:24; Psa. 46:7, 11; 2 Kings 3:9-12; Jer. 11:20 (NT: Rom. 9:29; James 5:4, Rev. 19: 11-16).
18	EL ELYON	“Most High” (from “to go up”) Deut. 26:19, 32:8; Psa. 18:13; Gen. 14:18; Nu. 24:16; Psa. 78:35, 7:17, 18:13, 97:9, 56:2, 78:56, 18:13; Dan. 7:25, 27; Isa. 14:14.
19	ABIR	‘Mighty One’, (“to be strong”) Gen. 49:24; Deut. 10:17; Psa. 132:2, 5; Isa. 1:24, 49:26, 60:1.
20	BRANCH	The Branch: Zech. 3:8, 6:12; Isa. 4:2; Jer. 23:5, 33:15.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

21	KADOSH	“Holy One” Psa. 71:22; Isa. 40:25, 43:3, 48:17. Isaiah uses the expression “the Holy One of Israel” 29 times.
22	SHAPHAT	“Judge” Gen. 18:25
23	EL ROI	“God of Seeing” Hagar in Gen. 16:13. The God Who opens our eyes.
24	KANNA	“Jealous” (zealous). Ex. 20:5, 34:14; Deut. 5:9; Isa. 9:7; Zech. 1:14, 8:2.
25	PALET	“Deliverer” Psa. 18:2.
26	YESHUA Maschiah (or Messiah).	“Savior” (“he will save”). Isa. 43:3. Jesus is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew “Joshua.” The latter is a contraction of Je-Hoshua. (“Christ”, the anointed one is equivalent to the Hebrew Maschiah, or Messiah).
27	GAOL	“Redeemer” (to buy back by paying a price). Job 19:25; For example, the antitype corresponding to Boaz the Kinsman-Redeemer in the Book of Ruth.
28	MAGEN	“Shield” Psa. 3:3, 18:30.
29	STONE	Gen. 49:24
30	EYALUTH	“Strength” Psa. 22:19.
31	TSADDIQ	“Righteous One” Psa. 7:9.
32	EL-OLAM	“Everlasting God” (God of everlasting time) Gen. 21:33; Psa. 90:1-3, 93:2; Isa. 26:4.
33	EL-BERITH	“God of the Covenant” Used of Baal in Judges 9:46. Probably used originally to refer to the God of Israel.
34	EL-GIBHOR	Mighty God (Isa. 9:6)
35	TSUR	“God our Rock” Deut. 32:18; Isa. 30:29. Malachi calls Messiah “The Sun of Righteousness” (Malachi 4:2). Isaiah calls Messiah “Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God (El Gibhor), Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace” (Isa. 9:6). ‘Attiq Yomin (Aramaic): “Ancient of Days,” Dan. 7:9, 13, 22.
36	MELEKH	“King” Psa. 5:2, 29:10, 44:4, 47:6-8, 48:2, 68:24, 74:12, 95:3, 97:1, 99:4, 146:10; Isa. 5:1, 5, 41:21, 43:15, 44:6; 52:7, 52:10.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

37	FATHER	2 Sam. 7:14-15; Psa. 68:5; Isa. 63:16, 64:8; Mal. 1:6.
----	--------	--

XIV. 9 Greek New Testament Names for God

9 GREEK NEW TESTAMENT NAMES FOR GOD		
1	KURIOS	“Lord” Found some 600 times in the NT.
2	DESPOTES	“Lord” 5 times: Lu. 2:29; Acts 4:24; 2 Pet. 2:1; Jude 4; Rev. 6:10.
3	THEOS	“God” (equivalent to the Hebrew Elohim), 1,000 times in the NT. In the NT all the persons of the trinity are called “God” at one time or another.
4	I AM	Jesus upset his generation especially when He said, “Before Abraham was, I AM,” John 8:58. Note also his claim to be Jehovah in such phrases as “I AM the Light of the world,” “the bread of life,” living water,” “the Resurrection and the Life,” “the Way, Truth and the Life” in John’s Gospel. From the Hebrew OT verb “to be” signifying a Living, Intelligent, Personal Being.
5	THEOTES	“Godhead” Col. 2:9; Rom. 1:20.
6	HUPSISTOS	“Highest” Mt. 21:9.
7	SOTER	(soter) “Savior” Luke 1:4 7.
8	WORD	(logos) John 1:1ff
9	ALMIGHTY	(pantokrator) 2 Cor. 6:18, Revelation 19:6.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 4: The Transmission of the Word of God

I. God Transmits His Word in Many Ways

- A. By his creation
- B. By his prophets
- C. By his own voice – Matthew 3:17, etc.
- D. By the mouth of Jesus Christ – John 10:30; 14:10
- E. By his own hand – Exodus 31:18; Deuteronomy 9:10; Daniel 5:5; John 8:6
- F. By the scriptures – 2 Timothy 3:16
- G. By writing in the hearts of men – Hebrews 8:10
- H. Written on men – Revelation 3:12
- I. By scribes, copyists, and amanuenses
- J. Through the Holy Ghost – Romans 8:26

II. Word of God Manifested by The Heavens God Created

- A. Psalm 19:1 – The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork.
- B. 2 Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge.
- C. 3 There is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard.
- D. 4 Their line is gone out through all the earth, and their words to the end of the world. In them hath he set a tabernacle for the sun,
- E. 5 Which is as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, and rejoiceth as a strong man to run a race.
- F. 6 His going forth is from the end of the heaven, and his circuit unto the ends of it: and there is nothing hid from the heat thereof.
- G. 7 The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple.
- H. 8 The statutes of the LORD are right, rejoicing the heart: the commandment of the LORD is pure, enlightening the eyes.
- I. 9 The fear of the LORD is clean, enduring for ever: the judgments of the LORD are true and righteous altogether.
- J. 10 More to be desired are they than gold, yea, than much fine gold: sweeter also than honey and the honeycomb.
- K. 11 Moreover by them is thy servant warned: and in keeping of them there is great reward.
- L. 12 Who can understand his errors? cleanse thou me from secret faults.
- M. 13 Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me: then shall I be upright, and I shall be innocent from the great transgression.
- N. 14 Let the words of my mouth, and the meditation of my heart, be acceptable in thy sight, O LORD, my strength, and my redeemer.

III. Word of God Written by God Himself

- A. Deuteronomy 9:10 – And the Lord delivered unto me two tables of stone written with the finger of God; and on them was written according to all the words, which the Lord spake

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

with you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly.

IV. God's Word Transmitted through Human Instrumentality.

- A. 2 Peter 1:21 – For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.
- B. Deuteronomy 6:9 – And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.
- C. Deuteronomy 11:20 – And thou shalt write them upon the door posts of thine house, and upon thy gates:

V. The Word Was Made Flesh

- A. John 1:1 – In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.
- B. 2 The same was in the beginning with God.
- C. 3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.
- D. 4 In him was life; and the life was the light of men.
- E. 14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

VI. Written Upon Our Hearts

- A. Proverbs 3:3 – Let not mercy and truth forsake thee: bind them about thy neck; write them upon the table of thine heart:
- B. Proverbs 7:3 – Bind them upon thy fingers, write them upon the table of thine heart.
- C. Jeremiah 31:33 – But this shall be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, saith the LORD, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they shall be my people.
- D. Hebrews 8:10 – For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to me a people:
- E. Hebrews 10:16 – This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put my laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them;

VII. God's Transmission of His Word through Scribes, Etc.

- A. Many prophets “spake” as they were moved by the Holy Ghost (2 Peter 1:21)
- B. Unknown men copied the words that came from the prophets' mouths.
- C. These copies are inspired words and are scriptures.
- D. Paul sometimes wrote a whole letter by hand – Galatians 6:11, Philemon 1:19.
- E. Paul sometimes had men write for him, and he wrote the endings by his own hand – 1 Corinthians 6:21; 2 Thessalonians 3:17.
- F. Jesus' words in the Gospels were written by men. These words in scripture are just as inspired as the original words.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- G. Process – God > Spirit or Jesus > Men > Words written down > words copied again and again > words translated rightly.

VIII. Translations of God's Word can be Inspired

- A. New Testament Greek quotes Old Testament Hebrew scriptures translating them
- B. Greek translation just as inspired as Hebrew.
- C. There are 283 direct quotations from the Old Testament in the New Testament
- D. Easier to list the Old Testament books *not* mentioned in the New Testament:
 - Judges
 - Ruth
 - Ezra
 - Ester
 - Ecclesiastes
 - Song of Solomon
 - Lamentations
 - Obadiah
 - Jonah
 - Zephaniah
- E. Aramaic translations in the New Testament – See Lesson 42

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 5: The Inscription of the Word of God

I. God Breathed His Word

- A. Job 32:8 – But there is a spirit in man: and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.
- B. 2 Timothy 3:16 – All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:
- C. “Scripture is God-breathed” – γραφή θεόπνευστος – *graphē theopneustos*
- D. Strong’s 2315 – 1 occurrence found in 2 Timothy 3:16
- E. 2315 *theópneustos* (from 2316 *theós*, “God” and 4154 *pnéō*, “breathe out”) – properly, God-breathed, referring to the divine inspiration (inbreathing) of Scripture (used only in 2 Timothy 3:16).
- F. Inspiration applies to “all scripture”
- G. And “all scripture” is given by inspiration of God.

II. Prophets Spake as They were Moved by the Holy Ghost

- A. 2 Peter 1:21 – For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.
- B. Phrase “were moved” – being carried
- C. Strong’s 5342 φερόμενοι – *pheromenoi*
- D. Verb means to bear, to carry, to bring, to lead – to a definite conclusion.
- E. Same root word used as “let her drive” in Acts 27:15 – And when the ship was caught, and could not bear up into the wind, we let her drive.
- F. Same root word used as “a rushing” in Acts 2:2 – And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting.
- G. Acts 2:4 – And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.

III. Men Wrote the Words of the Prophets

- A. Sometime the prophet himself wrote the words
- B. Sometimes a scribe or an amanuensis wrote the words
- C. Jeremiah 30:2 – Thus speaketh the Lord God of Israel, saying, Write thee all the words that I have spoken unto thee in a book.

IV. God-inspired Writings are Scriptures

- A. Romans 1:2 – (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)
- B. Exodus 34:1 – And the LORD said unto Moses, Hew thee two tables of stone like unto the first: and I will write upon these tables the words that were in the first tables, which thou brakest.
- C. Isaiah 8:1 – Moreover the LORD said unto me, Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man’s pen concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- D. Jeremiah 30:2 – Thus speaketh the LORD God of Israel, saying, Write thee all the words that I have spoken unto thee in a book.
- E. Jeremiah 36:2 – Take thee a roll of a book, and write therein all the words that I have spoken unto thee against Israel, and against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I spake unto thee, from the days of Josiah, even unto this day.
- F. Habakkuk 2:2 – And the LORD answered me, and said, Write the vision, and make it plain upon tables, that he may run that readeth it.

V. Scriptures Means Written

- A. Daniel 10:21 – first and only mention in the Old Testament of “scripture”
- B. Strong’s 3791 *kethab*, meaning a writing, decree, edict letter, register, etc.
- C. 51 times used in the New Testament, always of holy scripture
- D. Matthew 21:42 – first mention
- E. Strong’s 1124 *graphé*, meaning a writing, scripture or scriptures, i.e., the inspired, inerrant writings of the Bible
- F. Scriptures are read – Matthew 21:42; Mark 12:10
- G. Scriptures speak – Mark 15:28; John 7:42; Romans 10:11
- H. Scriptures can be searched – John 5:39
- I. Scriptures cannot be broken (i.e., destroyed, set at naught, contravened, annulled) – John 10:35
- J. Scriptures foresee – Galatians 3:8

VI. God Wrote Also

- A. The heavens declare the glory of God
- B. Psalm 19:1 – The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament sheweth his handywork.
- C. 2 Day unto day uttereth speech, and night unto night sheweth knowledge.
- D. 3 There is no speech nor language, where their voice is not heard.
- E. God wrote on tables of stone – Exodus 31:18; Deuteronomy 9:10
- F. On the wall of a palace – Daniel 5:5
- G. On the ground – John 8:6
- H. In our minds and hearts – Hebrews 10:16

VII. Faithful Copies are Inspired Scriptures

- A. Kings and Priests made copies
- B. Deuteronomy 17:18 – And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this law in a book out of that which is before the priests the Levites:
- C. Scribes made copies
- D. Moses made copies
- E. Writers
- F. Amanuenses
- G. Copyists

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

VIII. The Scriptures Replace the Apostles and the Prophets

- A. Matthew 26:56 – But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples forsook him, and fled.
- B. Romans 1:2 -- (Which he had promised afore by his prophets in the holy scriptures,)
- C. Romans 16:26 – But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:
- D. 2 Peter 3:15 – And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you;
- E. 16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.
- F. Today we have the scriptures in place of Apostles and Prophets
- G. Today we have men who are Evangelists, Pastors and Teachers
- H. Ephesians 4:11 – And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 6: The Perfection of the Word of God

I. God is Perfect

- A. Matthew 5:48 – Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.
- B. Luke 6:40 – The disciple is not above his master: but every one that is perfect shall be as his master.

II. God's Will is Perfect

- A. Romans 12:2 – And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.
- B. Colossians 4:12 – Epaphras, who is one of you, a servant of Christ, saluteth you, always labouring fervently for you in prayers, that ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.

III. God's Work is Perfect

- A. Deuteronomy 32:4 – He is the Rock, his work is perfect: for all his ways are judgment: a God of truth and without iniquity, just and right is he.
- B. Hebrews 2:10 – For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.
- C. Hebrews 5:9 – And being made perfect, he became the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey him;

IV. God's Way is Perfect

- A. 2 Samuel 22:31 – As for God, his way is perfect; the word of the LORD is tried: he is a buckler to all them that trust in him.
- B. Psalm 18:30 – As for God, his way is perfect: the word of the LORD is tried: he is a buckler to all those that trust in him.
- C. 2 Timothy 3:17 – That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.

V. God's Wisdom is Perfect

- A. 1 Corinthians 2:1 – And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God.
- B. 2 For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified.
- C. 3 And I was with you in weakness, and in fear, and in much trembling.
- D. 4 And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power:
- E. 5 That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- F. 6 Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought:
- G. 7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:
- H. 8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

VI. God's Word is Perfect

- A. Psalm 119:140 – Thy word is very pure: therefore thy servant loveth it.
- B. Psalm 19:7 – The law of the LORD is perfect, converting the soul: the testimony of the LORD is sure, making wise the simple.
- C. Proverbs 30:5 – Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him.
- D. 6 Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.
- E. Psalm 12:6 – The words of the LORD are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.
- F. 7 Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 7: The Protection of the Word of God

I. God Preserves His Word

- A. Psalm 12:7 – Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.
- B. Proverbs 22:12 – The eyes of the LORD preserve knowledge, and he overthroweth the words of the transgressor.
- C. Matthew 5:18 – For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.
- D. Matthew 24:35 – Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.
- E. Mark 13:31 – Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.
- F. Luke 21:33 – Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.
- G. 1 Peter 1:25 – But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

II. God's Word Cannot be Broken

- A. Psalm 119:160 – Thy word is true from the beginning: and every one of thy righteous judgments endureth for ever.
- B. John 7:23 – If a man on the sabbath day receive circumcision, that the law of Moses should not be broken; are ye angry at me, because I have made a man every whit whole on the sabbath day?
- C. John 10:35 – If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken;

III. God's Word Will Not Pass Away

- H. Psalm 12:7 – Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.
- I. Psalm 119:89 – For ever, O LORD, thy word is settled in heaven.

IV. God's Word Protects Those Who Trust It

- A. 2 Samuel 22:31 – As for God, his way is perfect; the word of the LORD is tried: he is a buckler to all them that trust in him.
- B. Psalm 18:30 – As for God, his way is perfect: the word of the LORD is tried: he is a buckler to all those that trust in him.
- C. Proverbs 30:5 – Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him.
- D. Proverbs 18:10 – The name of the LORD is a strong tower: the righteous runneth into it, and is safe.
- E. Psalm 138:2 – I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name.
- F. Psalm 61:3 – For thou hast been a shelter for me, and a strong tower from the enemy.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- G. Psalm 119:114 – Thou art my hiding place and my shield: I hope in thy word.
- H. Ephesians 6:17 – And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:
- I. John 17:17 – Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 8: The Duplication of the Word of God

I. God's Word is Intended to Be Copied

- A. Deuteronomy 6:4 – Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God is one LORD:
- B. 5 And thou shalt love the LORD thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.
- C. 6 And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart:
- D. 7 And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
- E. 8 And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes.
- F. 9 And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.
- G. Deuteronomy 11:18 – Therefore shall ye lay up these my words in your heart and in your soul, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes.
- H. 19 And ye shall teach them your children, speaking of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
- I. 20 And thou shalt write them upon the door posts of thine house, and upon thy gates:
- J. 21 That your days may be multiplied, and the days of your children, in the land which the LORD swore unto your fathers to give them, as the days of heaven upon the earth.
- K. Deuteronomy 17:18 – And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this law in a book out of that which is before the priests the Levites:
- L. Joshua 8:32 – And he wrote there upon the stones a copy of the law of Moses, which he wrote in the presence of the children of Israel.
- M. Proverbs 25:1 – These are also proverbs of Solomon, which the men of Hezekiah king of Judah copied out.

II. Copies Replacing Originals Become Originals

- A. Joshua 8:32 – And he wrote there upon the stones a copy of the law of Moses, which he wrote in the presence of the children of Israel.
- B. Jeremiah 30:2 – Thus speaketh the LORD God of Israel, saying, Write thee all the words that I have spoken unto thee in a book.
- C. Jeremiah 36:2 – Take thee a roll of a book, and write therein all the words that I have spoken unto thee against Israel, and against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I spake unto thee, from the days of Josiah, even unto this day.
- D. 4 Then Jeremiah called Baruch the son of Neriah: and Baruch wrote from the mouth of Jeremiah all the words of the LORD, which he had spoken unto him, upon a roll of a book.
- E. 18 Then Baruch answered them, He pronounced all these words unto me with his mouth, and I wrote them with ink in the book.
- F. 23 And it came to pass, that when Jehudi had read three or four leaves, he cut it with the penknife, and cast it into the fire that was on the hearth, until all the roll was consumed in the fire that was on the hearth.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- G. 27 Then the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah, after that the king had burned the roll, and the words which Baruch wrote at the mouth of Jeremiah, saying,
- H. 28 Take thee again another roll, and write in it all the former words that were in the first roll, which Jehoiakim the king of Judah hath burned.
- I. 29 And thou shalt say to Jehoiakim the king of Judah, Thus saith the LORD; Thou hast burned this roll, saying, Why hast thou written therein, saying, The king of Babylon shall certainly come and destroy this land, and shall cause to cease from thence man and beast?

III. Copies are Always to be Perfect

- A. 28 Take thee again another roll, and write in it all the former words that were in the first roll, which Jehoiakim the king of Judah hath burned.
- B. Matthew 5:18 – For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.
- C. Luke 16:17 – And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail.
- D. Proverbs 30:5 – Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him.
- E. Matthew 4:4 – But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

IV. How The Jewish Scribes Copied the Scriptures

There were eight rules that the Jewish copyists used in the copying of the texts:

- A. The parchment must be made from the skin of a clean animal (clean meaning ceremonially clean according to the Old Testament sanitary laws); must be prepared by a Jew only, and the skins must be fastened together by strings taken from clean animals.
- B. Each column must have no less than forty-eight, nor more than sixty lines. The entire copy must be first lined.
- C. The ink must be of no other color than black, and it must be prepared according to a special recipe.
- D. No word nor letter could be written from memory; the scribe must have an authentic copy before him, and he must read and pronounce aloud each word before writing it.
- E. He must reverently wipe his pen each time before writing the word for “God” (Elohim), and he must wash his whole body before writing the name “Jehovah” (LORD in our King James Bibles), lest the Holy Name be contaminated.
- F. Strict rules were given concerning forms of the letters, spaces between letters, words and sections, the use of the pen, the color of the parchment, etc.
- G. The revision (to correct any errors) of a roll must be made within thirty days after the work was finished; otherwise it was worthless. One mistake on a sheet condemned the entire sheet. If three mistakes were found on any page, the entire manuscript was condemned.
- H. Every word and every letter were counted, and if a letter was omitted, or if an extra letter was inserted, or if two letters touched one another, the manuscript was condemned and destroyed at once.

V. God Used Uninspired Copyists to Preserve his Inspired Word

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Scribes
- B. Copyists
- C. Kings and Priests
- D. Amanuenses
- E. Following a careful process
- F. No error
- G. Exact copies
- H. Every jot and tittle
- I. Every word
- J. Matthew 18:16 – But if he will not hear thee, then take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established.
- K. 2 Corinthians 13:1 – This is the third time I am coming to you. In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 9: The Preservation of the Word of God

I. The Preservation of the Word of God is Promised by God

- A. Preservation of the Scriptures through faithful copying (Psalm 12:5, 6)
- B. People, Prince, and Priest were to copy the Old Testament (Deuteronomy 6, 18)
- C. Preservation – promise, multiplication, keeping by God’s people, God’s program
- D. The means of preservation (original autographs are now copied), manuscripts

II. The Preservation Process Never Changes the Word of God

- A. Psalm 119:89 – For ever, O LORD, thy word is settled in heaven.
- B. Psalm 100:5 – For the LORD is good; his mercy is everlasting; and his truth endureth to all generations.
- C. Psalm 119:160 – Thy word is true from the beginning: and every one of thy righteous judgments endureth for ever.

III. God’s Word Shall Always Stand

- A. Isaiah 40:8 – The grass withereth, the flower fadeth: but the word of our God shall stand for ever.
- B. Matthew 5:18 – For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.
- C. Luke 16:17 – And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail.
- D. Matthew 24:35 – Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.
- E. Mark 13:31 – Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.
- F. Luke 21:33 – Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.
- G. 1 Peter 1:25 – But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

IV. The Doctrine of the Providential Preservation of the Word of God

- A. Romans 3:1 – What advantage then hath the Jew? or what profit is there of circumcision?
- B. 2 Much every way: chiefly, because that unto them were committed the oracles of God.
- C. Psalm 119:160 – Thy word is true from the beginning: and every one of thy righteous judgments endureth for ever.
- D. 1 Peter 1:23 – Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.
- E. 24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:
- F. 25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

V. Old Testament Preservation

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Masoretic Text
- B. Hebrew Old Testament
- C. Not the Septuagint (LXX)

VI. New Testament Preservation

- A. Textus Receptus
- B. TR
- C. Received Text
- D. Called the Byzantine Text because of the text-type used
- E. Majority Text
- F. Antiochian Text
- G. Called the Traditional Text or Ecclesiastical Text because it was handed down and preserved by the churches.
- H. King James Version of 1611
- I. The Greek Text Underlying the King James Version

VII. Corrupt Untrustworthy Manuscripts

- A. Added to, taken away from, or changed the word of God
- B. Paraphrases some of them
- C. Translated by unbelievers
- D. Corrupt Manuscripts
- E. Codex Vaticanus
- F. LXX
- G. Septuagint
- H. Westcott and Hort Greek Text
- I. Alexandrian Text
- J. Minority Text
- K. Origen's *Hexalpa*

VIII. Preservation Applies to Inspiration

- A. If it is scripture, it is "given by inspiration."
- B. 2 Timothy 3:16 – All scripture is given by inspiration of God...
- C. If the writing is not "given by inspiration of God" we only have an idea of God's word.
- D. Perfect copies are given by inspiration.
- E. Translations can be given by inspiration – see Matthew 4:4, etc.
- F. Many "originals were spoken" (2 Peter 1:21; Jesus' words in the gospels, etc.) then copied down later in written form.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 10: The Purification of the Word of God

I. God's Word is Pure

- A. Proverbs 30:5 – Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him.
- B. 6 Add thou not unto his words, lest he reprove thee, and thou be found a liar.
- C. Psalm 119:140 – Thy word is very pure: therefore thy servant loveth it.

II. God's Word is Purified Seven Times

- A. A Perfect Preservation
- B. A Providential Preservation
- C. A Perpetual Preservation
- D. A Plenary Preservation
- E. A Pure Preservation
- F. A Promised Preservation
- G. A Personal Preservation – speaks of Jesus Christ
- H. Psalm 12:6 – The words of the LORD are pure words: as silver tried in a furnace of earth, purified seven times.
- I. 7 Thou shalt keep them, O LORD, thou shalt preserve them from this generation for ever.

III. Languages of Purification

- A. Hebrew
- B. Aramaic
- C. Greek
- D. English (KJV)
- E. Bad copies destroyed
- F. Good copies preserved
- G. Majority of Witnesses

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 11: The Declaration of Jesus

I. Scriptures Testify of Jesus Christ

- A. John 5:39 – Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.
- B. Acts 2:25 – For David speaketh concerning him, I foresaw the Lord always before my face, for he is on my right hand, that I should not be moved:

II. Jesus is the Grand Subject of the Scriptures

- A. 2 Timothy 3:15 – And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.
- B. Luke 24:27 – And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

III. Jesus Fulfills the Word of God

- A. Luke 24:44 – And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.
- B. Luke 22:37 – For I say unto you, that this that is written must yet be accomplished in me, And he was reckoned among the transgressors: for the things concerning me have an end.
- C. Matthew 5:18 – For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

IV. Jesus is the Word of God

- A. John 1:1 – In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.
- B. 14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.
- C. 1 John 5:7 – For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.
- D. Revelation 19:13 – And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

V. Jesus the Word is Near to All for Salvation

- A. Romans 10:8 – But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach;
- B. 9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.
- C. 10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

made unto salvation.

- D. 11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.
- E. 12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.
- F. 13 For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.
- G. 14 How then shall they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher?
- H. 15 And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!
- I. 16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?
- J. 17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 12: The Discrimination of the Word of God

I. The Word of God is Sown in Four Type of Hearts

- A. Matthew 13:19 – When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth it not, then cometh the wicked one, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side.
- B. 20 But he that received the seed into stony places, the same is he that heareth the word, and anon with joy receiveth it;
- C. 21 Yet hath he not root in himself, but dureth for a while: for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, by and by he is offended.
- D. 22 He also that received seed among the thorns is he that heareth the word; and the care of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, choke the word, and he becometh unfruitful.
- E. 23 But he that received seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word, and understandeth it; which also beareth fruit, and bringeth forth, some an hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.

II. Those Who Are Critical of God's Word Will Not Understand

- A. John 8:47 – He that is of God heareth God's words: ye therefore hear them not, because ye are not of God.
- B. Mark 4:12 – That seeing they may see, and not perceive; and hearing they may hear, and not understand; lest at any time they should be converted, and their sins should be forgiven them.
- C. John 12:34 – The people answered him, We have heard out of the law that Christ abideth for ever: and how sayest thou, The Son of man must be lifted up? who is this Son of man?
- D. 35 Then Jesus said unto them, Yet a little while is the light with you. Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you: for he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth.
- E. 36 While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light. These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide himself from them.
- F. 37 But though he had done so many miracles before them, yet they believed not on him:
- G. 38 That the saying of Esaias the prophet might be fulfilled, which he spake, Lord, who hath believed our report? and to whom hath the arm of the Lord been revealed?
- H. 39 Therefore they could not believe, because that Esaias said again,
- I. 40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.
- J. 41 These things said Esaias, when he saw his glory, and spake of him.

III. Jesus Does Not that which is Holy to the Dogs

- A. Matthew 7:6 – Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.
- B. Matthew 10:14 – And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when ye depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet.
- C. Mark 6:11 – And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear you, when ye depart thence,

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

shake off the dust under your feet for a testimony against them. Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for Sodom and Gomorrha in the day of judgment, than for that city.

- D. Luke 9:5 – And whosoever will not receive you, when ye go out of that city, shake off the very dust from your feet for a testimony against them.
- E. Luke 10:11 -- Even the very dust of your city, which cleaveth on us, we do wipe off against you: notwithstanding be ye sure of this, that the kingdom of God is come nigh unto you.
- F. Acts 13:51 – But they shook off the dust of their feet against them, and came unto Iconium.

IV. **Jesus' Sheep Hear His Word**

- A. John 10:27 – My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:
- B. Luke 8:10 – And he said, Unto you it is given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God: but to others in parables; that seeing they might not see, and hearing they might not understand.

V. **God's Word is the Priority in the Ministry**

- A. Acts 6:2 – Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples unto them, and said, It is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables.
- B. 4 But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 13: Salvation by the Scriptures

I. Jesus' Testimony

- A. John 5:39 – Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.
- B. John 6:63 – It is the spirit that quickeneth; the flesh profiteth nothing: the words that I speak unto you, they are spirit, and they are life.

II. Peter's Testimony

- A. 1 Peter 1:22 – Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, see that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently:
- B. 23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.
- C. 24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:
- D. 25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

III. John's Testimony

- A. John 20:31 – But these are written, that ye might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God; and that believing ye might have life through his name.
- B. 1 John 3:23 – And this is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, and love one another, as he gave us commandment.
- C. 24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.
- D. 1 John 5:11 – And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.
- E. 12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.
- F. 13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

IV. Paul's Testimony

- A. Romans 1:16 – For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.
- B. Romans 10:16 – But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?
- C. 17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.
- D. 1 Corinthians 15:1 – Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- E. 2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.
- F. 3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;
- G. 4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:
- H. 2 Timothy 3:15 – And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.

V. **James' Testimony**

- A. James 1:18 – Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth, that we should be a kind of firstfruits of his creatures.

VI. **Jude's Testimony**

- A. Jude 1:3 – Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort you that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints.
- B. 17 But, beloved, remember ye the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ;
- C. 18 How that they told you there should be mockers in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts.
- D. 19 These be they who separate themselves, sensual, having not the Spirit.
- E. 20 But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,
- F. 21 Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.
- G. 22 And of some have compassion, making a difference:
- H. 23 And others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.

VII. **Luke's Testimony**

- A. Acts 2:41 – Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.
- B. Acts 11:1 – And the apostles and brethren that were in Judaea heard that the Gentiles had also received the word of God.
- C. 18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.
- D. Acts 13:48 – And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 14: Sanctification of the Word of God

I. We are Sanctified by the Word of God

- A. John 17:17 – Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.
- B. 19 And for their sakes I sanctify myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth.
- C. 2 Thessalonians 2:13 – But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth:

II. We are Washed by the Word of God

- A. Ephesians 5:26 – That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word,
- B. Hebrews 10:22 – Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.

III. Our Food is Sanctified by the Word of God

- A. 1 Timothy 4:4 – For every creature of God is good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving:
- B. 5 For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

IV. The Word Builds Up the Sanctified

- A. Acts 20:32 – And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.

V. Testimony from David in Psalm 119

- A. Psalm 119:9 – Wherewithal shall a young man cleanse his way? by taking heed thereto according to thy word.
- B. Psalm 119:11 – Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.
- C. Psalm 119:66 – Teach me good judgment and knowledge: for I have believed thy commandments.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 15: The Illumination of the Scriptures

I. God's Word is a Light

- A. Proverbs 6:23 – For the commandment is a lamp; and the law is light; and reproofs of instruction are the way of life:
- B. Isaiah 8:20 – To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

II. God's Word Gives Us Light

- A. Psalm 119:130 – The entrance of thy words giveth light; it giveth understanding unto the simple.

III. God's Word Lightens our Path

- A. Psalm 119:105 – Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path.

IV. The Gospel Gives Light

- A. 2 Corinthians 4:3 – But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost:
- B. 4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.
- C. 5 For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; and ourselves your servants for Jesus' sake.
- D. 6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

V. The Light Makes Manifest

- A. Ephesians 5:13 – But all things that are reprov'd are made manifest by the light: for whatsoever doth make manifest is light.

VI. Jesus Gives the Light of Life

- A. John 8:12 – Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 16: Reconciliation by the Scriptures

I. God's Word is a Word of Reconciliation

- A. 2 Corinthians 5:18 – And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;
- B. 19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

II. The Gospel Brings Reconciliation

- A. Romans 5:10 – For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.
- B. Ephesians 2:16 – And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:

III. Jesus' Blood Brings Reconciliation

- A. Colossians 1:20 – And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things unto himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven.
- B. 21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now hath he reconciled

IV. As Ambassadors for Christ, We Preach Reconciliation

- A. 2 Corinthians 5:20 – Now then we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God did beseech you by us: we pray you in Christ's stead, be ye reconciled to God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 17: The Exertion (Power) of the Scriptures

I. The Word of God is Powerful

- A. Matthew 22:29 – Jesus answered and said unto them, Ye do err, not knowing the scriptures, nor the power of God.
- B. Luke 4:32 – And they were astonished at his doctrine: for his word was with power.
- C. 36 And they were all amazed, and spake among themselves, saying, What a word is this! for with authority and power he commandeth the unclean spirits, and they come out.
- D. Hebrews 4:12 – For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.
- E. Ecclesiastes 8:4 – Where the word of a king is, there is power: and who may say unto him, What doest thou?

II. The Gospel is the Power of God unto Salvation

- A. Romans 1:16 – For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.
- B. 1 Thessalonians 2:13 – For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.
- C. 1 Corinthians 1:18 – For the preaching of the cross is to them that perish foolishness; but unto us which are saved it is the power of God.
- D. 24 But unto them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God, and the wisdom of God.

III. All Things Upheld by the Word of God's Power

- A. Hebrews 1:3 – Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;
- B. 2 Corinthians 6:1 – We then, as workers together with him, beseech you also that ye receive not the grace of God in vain.
- C. 2 (For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured thee: behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)
- D. 3 Giving no offence in any thing, that the ministry be not blamed:
- E. 4 But in all things approving ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses,
- F. 5 In stripes, in imprisonments, in tumults, in labours, in watchings, in fastings;
- G. 6 By pureness, by knowledge, by longsuffering, by kindness, by the Holy Ghost, by love unfeigned,
- H. 7 By the word of truth, by the power of God, by the armour of righteousness on the right hand and on the left,
- I. 8 By honour and dishonour, by evil report and good report: as deceivers, and yet true;
- J. 9 As unknown, and yet well known; as dying, and, behold, we live; as chastened, and not

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

killed;

- K. 10 As sorrowful, yet always rejoicing; as poor, yet making many rich; as having nothing, and yet possessing all things.

IV. **The Holy Ghost Gives Boldness to the Word of God**

- A. Acts 4:29 – And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak thy word,
- B. 31 And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.
- C. 1 Thessalonians 2:2 – But even after that we had suffered before, and were shamefully entreated, as ye know, at Philippi, we were bold in our God to speak unto you the gospel of God with much contention.
- D. Psalm 119:28 – My soul melteth for heaviness: strengthen thou me according unto thy word.

V. **Paul's Writings are Powerful**

- A. 2 Corinthians 10:10 – For his letters, say they, are weighty and powerful; but his bodily presence is weak, and his speech contemptible.
- B. 1 Thessalonians 1:5 – For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance; as ye know what manner of men we were among you for your sake.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 18: The Magnification of the Scriptures

I. God Magnified his Word Above All his Name

- A. Psalm 138:2 – I will worship toward thy holy temple, and praise thy name for thy lovingkindness and for thy truth: for thou hast magnified thy word above all thy name.
- B. Psalm 40:16 – Let all those that seek thee rejoice and be glad in thee: let such as love thy salvation say continually, The LORD be magnified.
- C. Isaiah 42:21 – The LORD is well pleased for his righteousness' sake; he will magnify the law, and make it honourable.

II. The Name of Jesus is Magnified

- A. Acts 19:14 – And there were seven sons of one Sceva, a Jew, and chief of the priests, which did so.
- B. 15 And the evil spirit answered and said, Jesus I know, and Paul I know; but who are ye?
- C. 16 And the man in whom the evil spirit was leaped on them, and overcame them, and prevailed against them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded.
- D. 17 And this was known to all the Jews and Greeks also dwelling at Ephesus; and fear fell on them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was magnified.
- E. Psalm 70:4 – Let all those that seek thee rejoice and be glad in thee: and let such as love thy salvation say continually, Let God be magnified.
- F. Luke 1:46 – And Mary said, My soul doth magnify the Lord,
- G. Psalm 69:30 – I will praise the name of God with a song, and will magnify him with thanksgiving.
- H. Psalm 70:4 – Let all those that seek thee rejoice and be glad in thee: and let such as love thy salvation say continually, Let God be magnified.

III. The Word of God Grew and Prevailed

- A. Acts 19:18 – And many that believed came, and confessed, and shewed their deeds.
- B. 19 Many of them also which used curious arts brought their books together, and burned them before all men: and they counted the price of them, and found it fifty thousand pieces of silver.
- C. 20 So mightily grew the word of God and prevailed.

IV. God's Word is Great

- A. Psalm 112:1 – Praise ye the LORD. Blessed is the man that feareth the LORD, that delighteth greatly in his commandments.
- B. Psalm 119:162 – I rejoice at thy word, as one that findeth great spoil.
- C. Psalm 139:17 – How precious also are thy thoughts unto me, O God! how great is the sum of them!

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 19: Persecution Because of the Word of God

I. The World Hates Jesus Without a Cause

- A. John 15:18 – If the world hate you, ye know that it hated me before it hated you.
- B. 19 If ye were of the world, the world would love his own: but because ye are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you.
- C. 20 Remember the word that I said unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they have kept my saying, they will keep yours also.
- D. 21 But all these things will they do unto you for my name's sake, because they know not him that sent me.
- E. 22 If I had not come and spoken unto them, they had not had sin: but now they have no cloke for their sin.
- F. 23 He that hateth me hateth my Father also.
- G. 24 If I had not done among them the works which none other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father.
- H. 25 But this cometh to pass, that the word might be fulfilled that is written in their law, They hated me without a cause.

II. Those who Love the Word are Hated Because of the Word

- A. Matthew 10:22 – And ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake: but he that endureth to the end shall be saved.
- B. Matthew 24:9 – Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted, and shall kill you: and ye shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake.
- C. John 3:20 – For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved.
- D. 1 John 3:13 – Marvel not, my brethren, if the world hate you.

III. Persecution and Tribulation because of the Word of God

- A. Revelation 1:9 – I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ.
- B. Revelation 6:9 – And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held:
- C. Revelation 20:4 – And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

IV. Persecution Because of the Word Causes Some to Fall Away

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Matthew 13:21 – Yet hath he not root in himself, but dureth for a while: for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, by and by he is offended.
- B. Mark 4:17 – And have no root in themselves, and so endure but for a time: afterward, when affliction or persecution ariseth for the word’s sake, immediately they are offended.

V. **Persecution Comes Upon those who Speak God’s Word**

- A. Luke 11:49 – Therefore also said the wisdom of God, I will send them prophets and apostles, and some of them they shall slay and persecute:
- B. John 15:20 – Remember the word that I said unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they have kept my saying, they will keep yours also.
- C. Acts 7:52 – Which of the prophets have not your fathers persecuted? and they have slain them which shewed before of the coming of the Just One; of whom ye have been now the betrayers and murderers:

VI. **There is Resistance Against the Word of God**

- A. Luke 21:15 – For I will give you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries shall not be able to gainsay nor resist.
- B. Acts 6:10 – And they were not able to resist the wisdom and the spirit by which he spake.
- C. Acts 7:51 – Ye stiffnecked and uncircumcised in heart and ears, ye do always resist the Holy Ghost: as your fathers did, so do ye.
- D. 2 Timothy 3:8 – Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood Moses, so do these also resist the truth: men of corrupt minds, reprobate concerning the faith.

VII. **Blessings Pronounced Upon the Persecuted**

- A. Matthew 5:10 – Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness’ sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
- B. 11 Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake.
- C. 12 Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 20: The Publication of the Word of God

I. Definition of the word “Publish”

- A. Prepare and issue a piece of writing (or other) for public distribution, readership, etc.
- B. To make content available or known to the public
- C. Printed copies
- D. The purpose is to disseminate the information to an audience.
- E. To announce or to bring to the public
- F. To make publically known, proclaim

II. Great Are Those Who Publish God’s Word

- A. Psalm 68:11 – The Lord gave the word: great was the company of those that published it.
- B. Isaiah 52:7 – How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth!
- C. Nahum 1:15 – Behold upon the mountains the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that publisheth peace! O Judah, keep thy solemn feasts, perform thy vows: for the wicked shall no more pass through thee; he is utterly cut off.
- D. Romans 10:15 – And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!

III. Examples of Publishing

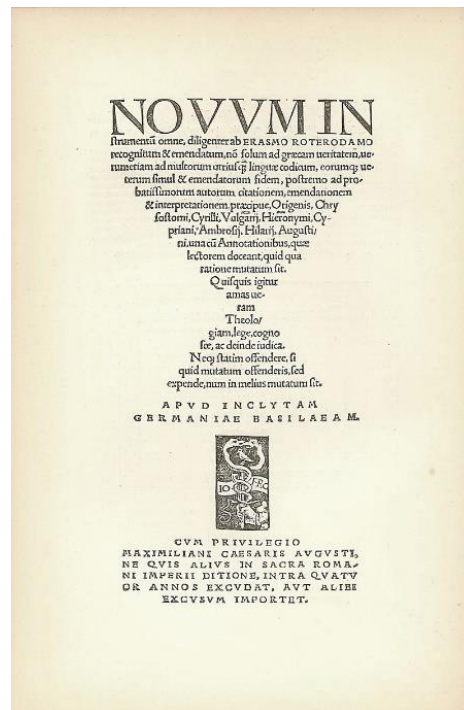
- A. Acts 10:37 – That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;
- B. Acts 13:49 – And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.
- C. Jonah 3:1 – And the word of the LORD came unto Jonah the second time, saying,
- D. 2 Arise, go unto Nineveh, that great city, and preach unto it the preaching that I bid thee.
- E. 3 So Jonah arose, and went unto Nineveh, according to the word of the LORD. Now Nineveh was an exceeding great city of three days’ journey.
- F. 4 And Jonah began to enter into the city a day’s journey, and he cried, and said, Yet forty days, and Nineveh shall be overthrown.
- G. 5 So the people of Nineveh believed God, and proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them.
- H. 6 For word came unto the king of Nineveh, and he arose from his throne, and he laid his robe from him, and covered him with sackcloth, and sat in ashes.
- I. 7 And he caused it to be proclaimed and published through Nineveh by the decree of the king and his nobles, saying, Let neither man nor beast, herd nor flock, taste any thing: let them not feed, nor drink water:
- J. 8 But let man and beast be covered with sackcloth, and cry mightily unto God: yea, let them turn every one from his evil way, and from the violence that is in their hands.
- K. 9 Who can tell if God will turn and repent, and turn away from his fierce anger, that we perish not?

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- L. 10 And God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil, that he had said that he would do unto them; and he did it not.
- M. Acts 13:46 – Then Paul and Barnabas waxed bold, and said, It was necessary that the word of God should first have been spoken to you: but seeing ye put it from you, and judge yourselves unworthy of everlasting life, lo, we turn to the Gentiles.
- N. 47 For so hath the Lord commanded us, saying, I have set thee to be a light of the Gentiles, that thou shouldest be for salvation unto the ends of the earth.
- O. 48 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed.
- P. 49 And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.

IV. Modern Day Publishing

- A. Publication – Desiderius Erasmus first *published* Greek New Testament in 1516
- B. Titled “Novum Instrumentum omne”
- C. The Complutensian Polyglot was *printed* in 1514 by Johann Froben, it was published after Erasmus’ work.
- D. Erasmus issued editions in 1516, 1519, 1522, 1527, and 1536.
- E. Martin Luther used Erasmus’ second edition for this German translation.
- F. William Tyndale used Erasmus’ third edition for the first English New Testament (1526).
- G. Also translators for the Geneva and KJV used the 1522 edition.
- H. The 1522 edition included the *Johanne Comma*.
- I. First Page of the Erasmian New Testament



CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 21: The Reproduction of the Word of God

I. The Word of God Reproduces Itself

- A. Acts 12:24 – But the word of God grew and multiplied.
- B. 2 Corinthians 9:6 – But this I say, He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully.
- C. 7 Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, so let him give; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver.
- D. 8 And God is able to make all grace abound toward you; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all things, may abound to every good work:
- E. 9 (As it is written, He hath dispersed abroad; he hath given to the poor: his righteousness remaineth for ever.
- F. 10 Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for your food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness;)
- G. 11 Being enriched in every thing to all bountifulness, which causeth through us thanksgiving to God.
- H. Genesis 1:11 – And God said, Let the earth bring forth grass, the herb yielding seed, and the fruit tree yielding fruit after his kind, whose seed is in itself, upon the earth: and it was so.
- I. 12 And the earth brought forth grass, and herb yielding seed after his kind, and the tree yielding fruit, whose seed was in itself, after his kind: and God saw that it was good.

II. The Word of God Reproduces Believers

- A. Luke 8:11 – Now the parable is this: The seed is the word of God.
- B. 1 Peter 1:23 – Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.
- C. Psalm 126:6 – He that goeth forth and weepeth, bearing precious seed, shall doubtless come again with rejoicing, bringing his sheaves with him.

III. The Word of God Reproduces Good Fruit in Believers

- A. Matthew 13:23 – But he that received seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word, and understandeth it; which also beareth fruit, and bringeth forth, some an hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.
- B. Ephesians 5:22 – But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,
- C. 23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.
- D. John 15:8 – Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.

IV. The Word of God is Reproduced by Kings and Priests

- A. Revelation 1:6 – And hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father; to him be

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

- B. Revelation 5:10 – And hast made us unto our God kings and priests: and we shall reign on the earth.
- C. Deuteronomy 17:18 – And it shall be, when he sitteth upon the throne of his kingdom, that he shall write him a copy of this law in a book out of that which is before the priests the Levites:
- D. 1 Peter 2:9 – But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 22: Multiplication of the Word of God

I. Examples of the Multiplication of Seed

- A. Genesis 1:28 – And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.
- B. Genesis 9:1 – And God blessed Noah and his sons, and said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth.
- C. Genesis 16:10 – And the angel of the LORD said unto her, I will multiply thy seed exceedingly, that it shall not be numbered for multitude.
- D. Genesis 22:17 – That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

II. The Word of God should be Multiplied

- A. Acts 6:7 – And the word of God increased; and the number of the disciples multiplied in Jerusalem greatly; and a great company of the priests were obedient to the faith.
- B. Acts 12:24 – But the word of God grew and multiplied.
- C. 2 Corinthians 9:10 – Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for your food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness;)
- D. Making a great number of copies.

III. The Introduction of the Printing Press was a Substantial Advantage to the Multiplication of the Word of God

- A. Gutenberg chose the Bible as the first product of his marvelous invention of movable type in 1455.
- B. For two centuries it was punishable by death to print the Bible in any language other than Latin, although the Old Testament existed in Hebrew and Greek. But under King James, a major effort created the translation known to most of the world, and a virtual war broke out over who would print it.
- C. The Gutenberg Bible – also called the Mazarin Bible, B42, or the 42-Line Bible
- D. The Gutenberg Bible was printed in Mainz in 1455 by Johann Gutenberg and his associates, Johann Fust and Peter Schoeffer. Only 48 copies are known to have survived, of which 12 are printed on vellum and 36 on paper. Twenty are complete, two of them at the British Library, one printed on paper (shelfmark C.9.d.3,4.) and one printed on vellum (shelfmark G.12226-7). Many copies, including the British Library's paper copy, married the new technology of printing with the old, and contain hand-painted decorations to imitate the appearance of an illuminated manuscript.
- E. In 1455, Gutenberg produced the one book to come out of his shop: a Bible. It is estimated he printed 180 copies of the 1,300-paged Gutenberg Bible, as many as 60 of them on vellum. Each page of the Bible contained 42 lines of text in Gothic type, with double columns and featuring some letters in color.
- F. For the Bible, Gutenberg used 300 separate molded letter blocks and 50,000 sheets of

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

paper. Many fragments of the books survive. There are 21 complete copies of the Gutenberg Bible, and four complete copies of the vellum version.

- G. An image of a page from the Gutenberg Bible shown below.



IV. Printing Press Changes the World

- A. The worldwide spread of the printing press meant a greater distribution of ideas that threatened the ironclad power structures of Europe.
- B. In 1501, Pope Alexander VI promised excommunication for anyone who printed manuscripts without the church's approval. Twenty years later, books from John Calvin and Martin Luther spread, bringing into reality what Alexander had feared.
- C. Furthering that threat, Copernicus published his *On the Revolutions of Heavenly Spheres*, which was seen as heresy by the church.
- D. By 1605, the first official newspaper, *Relation*, was printed and distributed in Strasbourg. Newspapers appeared all across Europe, formalizing the printing press' contribution to the growth of literacy, education, and the far-reaching availability of uniform information for ordinary people.
- E. Sources:
 - The Invention of Printing. Theodore Low De Vinne.
 - 500 Years of Printing. S.H. Steinberg.
 - Printer's Error: An Irreverent History of Books. Rebecca Romney.
 - Science and Civilisation in China: Volume 5, Chemistry and Chemical Technology, Paper and Printing. Joseph Needham, Tsien Tsuen-Hsui.
 - Cambridge Illustrated History of China. Patricia Buckley Ebrey.
 - Citation Information: History.com

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 23: The Nutrition of the Word of God

I. Man Does Not Live By Bread Only, But By the Word of God

- A. Matthew 4:4 – But he answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.
- B. Luke 4:4 – And Jesus answered him, saying, It is written, That man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word of God.
- C. We have every word.
- D. Matthew 6:11 – Give us this day our daily bread.
- E. 1 Corinthians 5:8 – Therefore let us keep the feast, not with old leaven, neither with the leaven of malice and wickedness; but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.
- F. 2 Corinthians 9:10 – Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for your food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness;)

II. Man Lives by Water

- A. Isaiah 55:8 – For my thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways my ways, saith the LORD.
- B. 9 For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.
- C. 10 For as the rain cometh down, and the snow from heaven, and returneth not thither, but watereth the earth, and maketh it bring forth and bud, that it may give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater:
- D. 11 So shall my word be that goeth forth out of my mouth: it shall not return unto me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.
- E. 12 For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands.
- F. 13 Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the LORD for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.
- G. Jesus is the Living Water of Life
- H. John 4:10 – Jesus answered and said unto her, If thou knewest the gift of God, and who it is that saith to thee, Give me to drink; thou wouldest have asked of him, and he would have given thee living water.
- I. 11 The woman saith unto him, Sir, thou hast nothing to draw with, and the well is deep: from whence then hast thou that living water?
- J. 12 Art thou greater than our father Jacob, which gave us the well, and drank thereof himself, and his children, and his cattle?
- K. 13 Jesus answered and said unto her, Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:
- L. 14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

III. New-Born Babes Desire Milk

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. 1 Corinthians 3:2 – I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able.
- B. Hebrews 5:12 – For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat.
- C. 13 For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe.
- D. 1 Peter 2:2 – As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:

IV. Young Men Desire Meat

- A. 1 Corinthians 3:2 – I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able.
- B. Hebrews 5:12 – For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles of the oracles of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat.
- C. 13 For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe.
- D. 14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.

V. Preachers Prepare a Message as a Chef Prepare a Meal

- A. Nutrition – the word of God
- B. Taste – the delivery method
- C. Appetizer – introduction
- D. Main Course – Message
- E. Vegetables – illustrations
- F. Dessert – interesting tidbits, some

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 24: Reception of the Word of God

I. Receiving Jesus and Receiving God's Word are Connected

- A. John 12:48 – He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day.
- B. Mark 16:15 – And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.
- C. Hebrews 4:2 – For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in them that heard it.
- D. Acts 20:24 – But none of these things move me, neither count I my life dear unto myself, so that I might finish my course with joy, and the ministry, which I have received of the Lord Jesus, to testify the gospel of the grace of God.
- E. Romans 1:16 – For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.
- F. Romans 10:15 – And how shall they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of them that preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things!
- G. 16 But they have not all obeyed the gospel. For Esaias saith, Lord, who hath believed our report?
- H. Ephesians 1:13 – In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,
- I. 2 Thessalonians 1:8 – In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:
- J. 1 Peter 4:17 – For the time is come that judgment must begin at the house of God: and if it first begin at us, what shall the end be of them that obey not the gospel of God?

II. Many Received the Word of God in Acts

- A. Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, Gentiles
- B. Acts 2:41 – Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.
- C. Acts 4:4 – Howbeit many of them which heard the word believed; and the number of the men was about five thousand.
- D. Acts 8:14 – Now when the apostles which were at Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent unto them Peter and John:
- E. Acts 11:1 – And the apostles and brethren that were in Judaea heard that the Gentiles had also received the word of God.

III. Freely Received, Freely Give

- A. Matthew 10:8 – Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give.
- B. 1 Corinthians 2:12 – Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- C. 2 Corinthians 11:7 – Have I committed an offence in abasing myself that ye might be exalted, because I have preached to you the gospel of God freely?
- D. 2 Thessalonians 3:1 – Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have free course, and be glorified, even as it is with you:

IV. Jesus' Instruction to the Disciples

- A. Matthew 10:14 – And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when ye depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet.
- B. 40 He that receiveth you receiveth me, and he that receiveth me receiveth him that sent me.
- C. 41 He that receiveth a prophet in the name of a prophet shall receive a prophet's reward; and he that receiveth a righteous man in the name of a righteous man shall receive a righteous man's reward.

V. Four Kinds of Reception

- A. Matthew 13:19 – When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth it not, then cometh the wicked one, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side.
- B. 20 But he that received the seed into stony places, the same is he that heareth the word, and anon with joy receiveth it;
- C. 22 He also that received seed among the thorns is he that heareth the word; and the care of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, choke the word, and he becometh unfruitful.
- D. 23 But he that received seed into the good ground is he that heareth the word, and understandeth it; which also beareth fruit, and bringeth forth, some an hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.
- E. Mark 4:20 – And these are they which are sown on good ground; such as hear the word, and receive it, and bring forth fruit, some thirtyfold, some sixty, and some an hundred.
- F. Luke 8:13 – They on the rock are they, which, when they hear, receive the word with joy; and these have no root, which for a while believe, and in time of temptation fall away.

VI. John the Baptist's Testimony

- A. John 3:25 – Then there arose a question between some of John's disciples and the Jews about purifying.
- B. 26 And they came unto John, and said unto him, Rabbi, he that was with thee beyond Jordan, to whom thou barest witness, behold, the same baptizeth, and all men come to him.
- C. 27 John answered and said, A man can receive nothing, except it be given him from heaven.
- D. 28 Ye yourselves bear me witness, that I said, I am not the Christ, but that I am sent before him.
- E. 29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled.
- F. 30 He must increase, but I must decrease.
- G. 31 He that cometh from above is above all: he that is of the earth is earthly, and speaketh of the earth: he that cometh from heaven is above all.
- H. 32 And what he hath seen and heard, that he testifieth; and no man receiveth his testimony.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- I. 33 He that hath received his testimony hath set to his seal that God is true.
- J. 34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him.
- K. 35 The Father loveth the Son, and hath given all things into his hand.
- L. 36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.

VII. Paul's Testimony of the Thessalonians

- A. 1 Thessalonians 1:6 – And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost:
- B. 1 Thessalonians 2:13 – For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.
- C. 1 Thessalonians 4:1 – Furthermore then we beseech you, brethren, and exhort you by the Lord Jesus, that as ye have received of us how ye ought to walk and to please God, so ye would abound more and more.
- D. 2 Thessalonians 2:10 – And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.
- E. 2 Thessalonians 3:6 – Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 25: The Application of the Word of God

I. Reading the Bible, We Find Several Applications

- A. The *Historical* Application – context of the writing – who, what, where, when, why, etc.
- B. The *Practical* Application – how the word of God is applied to our lives – what we should *do*.
- C. The *Spiritual* Application – how can we learn more about God and the way he thinks and operates.
- D. The *Prophetic* Application – how does the passage show things to come, if applicable.

II. How Should the Word of God be Applied?

- A. Personal study and meditation
- B. Teachers to consider the recipient – milk for babes, strong meat for others.
- C. Preachers to consider the recipient – Lost get the gospel, saved get baptism, church members get the doctrine of Christ.
- D. Preachers to consider whether hearers are carnal or spiritual.

III. Preach the Word

- A. 2 Timothy 4:2 – Preach the word;
- B. be instant in season,
- C. out of season;
- D. reprove,
- E. rebuke,
- F. exhort
- G. with all longsuffering
- H. and doctrine.

IV. Be Doers of the Word and Not Hearers Only

- A. James 1:22 – But be ye doers of the word,
- B. and not hearers only,
- C. deceiving your own selves.
- D. Hebrews 5:14 – But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 26: The Exhortation of the Word of God

I. God's Wants His People to be Exhorted, Not Destroyed

- A. Synagogues practiced exhortation: Acts 13:15 – And after the reading of the law and the prophets the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, Ye men and brethren, if ye have any word of exhortation for the people, say on.
- B. John the Baptist practiced exhortation: Luke 3:18 – And many other things in his exhortation preached he unto the people.
- C. Peter practiced exhortation: Acts 2:40 – And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation. (See also 1 Peter 5:1, 12)
- D. Barnabas practiced exhortation: Acts 11:23 – Who, when he came, and had seen the grace of God, was glad, and exhorted them all, that with purpose of heart they would cleave unto the Lord.
- E. Barnabas and Paul practiced exhortation: Acts 14:22 – Confirming the souls of the disciples, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.
- F. Judas and Silas practiced exhortation: Acts.15:32 – And Judas and Silas, being prophets also themselves, exhorted the brethren with many words, and confirmed them.
- G. Paul gave much exhortation: Acts 20:2 – And when he had gone over those parts, and had given them much exhortation, he came into Greece, (see also Acts 27:22; 2 Corinthians 9:5).
- H. Jude practiced Exhortation: Jude 1:3 – Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort you that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints.

II. The Purpose of Giving Church Leaders is to Exhort

- A. 1 Timothy 4:13 – Till I come, give attendance to reading, to exhortation, to doctrine.
- B. 1 Timothy 6:2 – And they that have believing masters, let them not despise them, because they are brethren; but rather do them service, because they are faithful and beloved, partakers of the benefit. These things teach and exhort.
- C. 2 Timothy 4:2 – Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.
- D. Titus 1:9 – Holding fast the faithful word as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound doctrine both to exhort and to convince the gainsayers.
- E. Titus 2:6 – Young men likewise exhort to be sober minded.
- F. 9 Exhort servants to be obedient unto their own masters, and to please them well in all things; not answering again;
- G. 15 These things speak, and exhort, and rebuke with all authority. Let no man despise thee.
- H. Ephesians 4:11 – And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;
- I. 12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:

III. The Preaching of the Word is to be Exhortative

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. 1 Thessalonians 2:1 – For yourselves, brethren, know our entrance in unto you, that it was not in vain:
- B. 2 But even after that we had suffered before, and were shamefully entreated, as ye know, at Philippi, we were bold in our God to speak unto you the gospel of God with much contention.
- C. 3 For our exhortation was not of deceit, nor of uncleanness, nor in guile:
- D. 4 But as we were allowed of God to be put in trust with the gospel, even so we speak; not as pleasing men, but God, which trieth our hearts.
- E. 2 Timothy 4:2 – Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.

IV. Definition of Exhortation

- A. Luke 3:18 exhortation – *parakalōn*, 9 occurrences
- B. Also translated *beseeking* (Matthew 8:5; Mark 1:40); *prayed* (Acts 16:9); and *comfort* (2 Corinthians 1:4; 7:6).
- C. Definition: to call to or for, to exhort, to encourage
- D. Usage: (a) I send for, summon, invite, (b) I beseech, entreat, beg, (c) I exhort, admonish, (d) I comfort, encourage, console.
- E. Strong's 3870 *parakalēō* (from 3844 *pará*, “from close-beside” and 2564 *kalēō*, “to call”) – properly, “make a call” from being “close-up and personal.”
- F. 3870 *parakalēō* (“personally make a call”) refers to believers offering up evidence that stands up in God's court.
- G. 3870 (*parakalēō*), the root of 3875 *paráklētos* (“legal advocate”), likewise has legal overtones.

V. How Paul Exhorted the Brethren

- A. 1 Thessalonians 2:10 – Ye are witnesses, and God also, how holily and justly and unblameably we behaved ourselves among you that believe:
- B. 11 As ye know how we exhorted and comforted and charged every one of you, as a father doth his children,
- C. 12 That ye would walk worthy of God, who hath called you unto his kingdom and glory.
- D. 1 Thessalonians 4:1 – Furthermore then we beseech you, brethren, and exhort you by the Lord Jesus, that as ye have received of us how ye ought to walk and to please God, so ye would abound more and more.
- E. 1 Thessalonians 5:14 – Now we exhort you, brethren, warn them that are unruly, comfort the feebleminded, support the weak, be patient toward all men.
- F. 2 Thessalonians 3:12 – Now them that are such we command and exhort by our Lord Jesus Christ, that with quietness they work, and eat their own bread.
- G. 1 Timothy 2:1 – I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men;

VI. Believers are to Exhort One Another Using the Word of God

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Exhortation can be a special gift, although all believers should practice it: Romans 12:8 – Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: he that giveth, let him do it with simplicity; he that ruleth, with diligence; he that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness.
- B. Hebrews 3:13 – But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin.
- C. Hebrews 10:25 – Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching.
- D. Hebrews 13:22 – And I beseech you, brethren, suffer the word of exhortation: for I have written a letter unto you in few words.
- E. Acts 18:27 – And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 27: Edification by the Scriptures

I. Building Upon the True Foundation – Jesus Christ the Word

- A. Matthew 7:24 – Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock:
- B. 25 And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.
- C. Luke 6:48 – He is like a man which built an house, and digged deep, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock.
- D. 49 But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built an house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great.
- E. Acts 4:11 – This is the stone which was set at nought of you builders, which is become the head of the corner.
- F. 9 For we are labourers together with God: ye are God’s husbandry, ye are God’s building.
- G. 10 According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon.
- H. 11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.
- I. 12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;
- J. 13 Every man’s work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man’s work of what sort it is.
- K. 14 If any man’s work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.
- L. 15 If any man’s work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.
- M. 16 Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?
- N. 17 If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy; for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are.
- O. Ephesians 2:19 – Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God;
- P. 20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;
- Q. 21 In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord:
- R. 22 In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.
- S. Colossians 2:7 – Rooted and built up in him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.
- T. 1 Peter 2:5 – Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.
- U. 7 Unto you therefore which believe he is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner,

II. The Work of Edification

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Acts 9:31 – Then had the churches rest throughout all Judaea and Galilee and Samaria, and were edified; and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort of the Holy Ghost, were multiplied.
- B. Romans 14:19 – Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another.
- C. Romans 15:2 – Let every one of us please his neighbour for his good to edification.
- D. 1 Corinthians 8:1 – Now as touching things offered unto idols, we know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffeth up, but charity edifieth.
- E. 1 Corinthians 10:23 – All things are lawful for me, but all things are not expedient: all things are lawful for me, but all things edify not.
- F. 1 Corinthians 14:3 – But he that prophesieth speaketh unto men to edification, and exhortation, and comfort.
- G. 4 He that speaketh in an unknown tongue edifieth himself; but he that prophesieth edifieth the church.
- H. 12 Even so ye, forasmuch as ye are zealous of spiritual gifts, seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church.
- I. Ephesians 4:16 – From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

III. Paul's Authority unto Edification

- A. 2 Corinthians 10:8 – For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed:
- B. 2 Corinthians 12:19 – Again, think ye that we excuse ourselves unto you? we speak before God in Christ: but we do all things, dearly beloved, for your edifying.
- C. 2 Corinthians 13:10 – Therefore I write these things being absent, lest being present I should use sharpness, according to the power which the Lord hath given me to edification, and not to destruction.
- D. Ephesians 4:12 – For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:
- E. 29 Let no corrupt communication proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers.
- F. 1 Thessalonians 5:11 – Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do.
- G. 1 Timothy 1:4 – Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith: so do.

IV. Being Edified by the Scriptures

- A. Acts 20:32 – And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.
- B. Jude 1:20 – But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,
- C. Romans 10:17 – So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

V. Admonishing One Another

- A. Romans 15:14 – And I myself also am persuaded of you, my brethren, that ye also are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge, able also to admonish one another.
- B. Colossians 3:16 – Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.
- C. 1 Thessalonians 5:12 – And we beseech you, brethren, to know them which labour among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you;
- D. 2 Thessalonians 3:15 – Yet count him not as an enemy, but admonish him as a brother.

VI. The Wisdom of Edification

- A. Romans 14:19 – Let us therefore follow after the things which make for peace, and things wherewith one may edify another.
- B. 1 Corinthians 10:23 – All things are lawful for me, but all things are not expedient: all things are lawful for me, but all things edify not.
- C. 12 Even so ye, forasmuch as ye are zealous of spiritual gifts, seek that ye may excel to the edifying of the church.
- D. 26 How is it then, brethren? when ye come together, everyone of you hath a psalm, hath a doctrine, hath a tongue, hath a revelation, hath an interpretation. Let all things be done unto edifying.
- E. Ephesians 4:11 – And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;
- F. 12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:
- G. 1 Thessalonians 5:11 – Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do.
- H. 1 Timothy 1:4 Neither give heed to fables and endless genealogies, which minister questions, rather than godly edifying which is in faith: so do.

VII. The Definition of the Word *Edify*

- A. Edify – *oikodomēs* – may edify – used two places – Romans 14:19, 2 Corinthians 12:19
- B. Root word is Strong’s 3619 *oikodomé*
- C. Cognate: 3619 *oikodomé* – properly, a building (edifice) serving as a home; (figuratively) constructive criticism and instruction that builds a person up to be the suitable dwelling place of God, i.e. where the Lord is “at home.” See 3618 (*oikodemeō*).
- D. from *oikos* and the same as *dóma*
- E. *oikos* – dwelling, house
- F. *dóma* – a *housetop*, roof, top of a house
- G. “Edification,” “edifying” – *oikodomēn*

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 28: Destruction and Construction by the Word of God

I. The Word of God Can Build Up or Tear Down

- A. Jeremiah 1:9 – Then the LORD put forth his hand, and touched my mouth. And the LORD said unto me, Behold, I have put my words in thy mouth.
- B. 10 See, I have this day set thee over the nations and over the kingdoms, to root out, and to pull down, and to destroy, and to throw down, to build, and to plant.
- C. Jeremiah 23:29 – Is not my word like as a fire? saith the LORD; and like a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces?
- D. 2 Peter 3:16 – As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.

II. The Word of God is a Two-Edged Sword

- A. Hebrews 4:12 – For the word of God is quick, and powerful, and sharper than any twoedged sword, piercing even to the dividing asunder of soul and spirit, and of the joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart.
- B. Sword cuts both ways – can heal or hurt.
- C. 2 Corinthians 10:8 – For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed:
- D. 9 That I may not seem as if I would terrify you by letters.
- E. 10 For his letters, say they, are weighty and powerful; but his bodily presence is weak, and his speech contemptible.
- F. 11 Let such an one think this, that, such as we are in word by letters when we are absent, such will we be also in deed when we are present.
- G. 2 Corinthians 13:10 – Therefore I write these things being absent, lest being present I should use sharpness, according to the power which the Lord hath given me to edification, and not to destruction.

III. The Word of God Shall Judge Those Who Use it Wrongly

- A. 2 Peter 2:1 – But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers among you, who privily shall bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.
- B. 2 And many shall follow their pernicious ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of.
- C. 3 And through covetousness shall they with feigned words make merchandise of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not.
- D. John 12:48 – He that rejecteth me, and receiveth not my words, hath one that judgeth him: the word that I have spoken, the same shall judge him in the last day.
- E. Revelation 22:18 – For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- F. 19 And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.

IV. Jesus as the Word

- A. Matthew 21:42 – Jesus saith unto them, Did ye never read in the scriptures, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner: this is the Lord's doing, and it is marvellous in our eyes?
- B. 43 Therefore say I unto you, The kingdom of God shall be taken from you, and given to a nation bringing forth the fruits thereof.
- C. 44 And whosoever shall fall on this stone shall be broken: but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.
- D. 45 And when the chief priests and Pharisees had heard his parables, they perceived that he spake of them.
- E. Luke 21:17 – And he beheld them, and said, What is this then that is written, The stone which the builders rejected, the same is become the head of the corner?
- F. 18 Whosoever shall fall upon that stone shall be broken; but on whomsoever it shall fall, it will grind him to powder.
- G. 19 And the chief priests and the scribes the same hour sought to lay hands on him; and they feared the people: for they perceived that he had spoken this parable against them.
- H. 20 And they watched him, and sent forth spies, which should feign themselves just men, that they might take hold of his words, that so they might deliver him unto the power and authority of the governor.
- I. 21 And they asked him, saying, Master, we know that thou sayest and teachest rightly, neither acceptest thou the person of any, but teachest the way of God truly:
- J. 22 Is it lawful for us to give tribute unto Caesar, or no?
- K. 23 But he perceived their craftiness, and said unto them, Why tempt ye me?
- L. 24 Shew me a penny. Whose image and superscription hath it? They answered and said, Caesar's.
- M. 25 And he said unto them, Render therefore unto Caesar the things which be Caesar's, and unto God the things which be God's.
- N. 26 And they could not take hold of his words before the people: and they marvelled at his answer, and held their peace.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 29: Interpretation of the Scriptures

I. The Interpretation of the Word of God Requires the Fear of the Lord

- A. Proverbs 1:5 – A wise man will hear, and will increase learning; and a man of understanding shall attain unto wise counsels:
- B. 6 To understand a proverb, and the interpretation; the words of the wise, and their dark sayings.
- C. 7 The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.

II. Good Understanding Comes from Obedience to the Word of God

- A. Psalm 111:10 – The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do his commandments: his praise endureth for ever.
- B. Isaiah 28:9 – Whom shall he teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? them that are weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts.
- C. 10 For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little:
- D. 11 For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people.

III. No Prophecy of Scripture is of Any Private Interpretation

- A. 2 Peter 1:19 – We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts:
- B. 20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation.
- C. 21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

IV. The Holy Ghost is Necessary for Proper Understanding

- A. John 16:13 – Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will shew you things to come.
- B. 1 Corinthians 2:10 – But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.
- C. 11 For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.
- D. 12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.
- E. 13 Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.
- F. 14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- G. 15 But he that is spiritual judgeth all things, yet he himself is judged of no man.
- H. 16 For who hath known the mind of the Lord, that he may instruct him? But we have the mind of Christ.

V. Jesus and His Fulfillment of Scriptures Helps in Understanding

- A. Luke 24:44 – And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.
- B. 45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,
- C. 46 And said unto them, Thus it is written, and thus it behoved Christ to suffer, and to rise from the dead the third day:
- D. 47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

VI. Timothy Instructed to Study and Rightly Divide

- A. 2 Timothy 2:15 – Study to shew thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.
- B. Ecclesiastes 12:12 – And further, by these, my son, be admonished: of making many books there is no end; and much study is a weariness of the flesh.

VII. Who is a Wise Man?

- A. Ecclesiastes 8:1 – Who is as the wise man? and who knoweth the interpretation of a thing? a man's wisdom maketh his face to shine, and the boldness of his face shall be changed.
- B. 2 I counsel thee to keep the king's commandment, and that in regard of the oath of God.
- C. 3 Be not hasty to go out of his sight: stand not in an evil thing; for he doeth whatsoever pleaseth him.
- D. 4 Where the word of a king is, there is power: and who may say unto him, What doest thou?
- E. 5 Whoso keepeth the commandment shall feel no evil thing: and a wise man's heart discerneth both time and judgment.
- F. 6 Because to every purpose there is time and judgment, therefore the misery of man is great upon him.
- G. 7 For he knoweth not that which shall be: for who can tell him when it shall be?
- H. 8 There is no man that hath power over the spirit to retain the spirit; neither hath he power in the day of death: and there is no discharge in that war; neither shall wickedness deliver those that are given to it.

VIII. Points from Above Passage

- A. A man's wisdom is seen in his face. How his facial expressions react to knowledge.
- B. Keep the King's Commandment – Jesus is our King.
- C. Stay in God's sight – Psalm 1.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- D. Submit to the word of God.
- E. Wise man's heart discerns time and judgment.
- F. God can guide through the times – God only knows the future.
- G. Serving God is the ultimate objective.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 30: The Progression in Learning the Word of God

I. God Teaches His Word is a Set Order

- A. Isaiah 28:9 – Whom shall he teach knowledge? and whom shall he make to understand doctrine? them that are weaned from the milk, and drawn from the breasts.
- B. 10 For precept must be upon precept, precept upon precept; line upon line, line upon line; here a little, and there a little:
- C. 11 For with stammering lips and another tongue will he speak to this people.

II. We Learn by Doing

- A. Psalm 111:10 – The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do his commandments: his praise endureth for ever.

III. Be Ye Doers of the Word

- A. James 1:22 – But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.
- B. 23 For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like unto a man beholding his natural face in a glass:
- C. 24 For he beholdeth himself, and goeth his way, and straightway forgetteth what manner of man he was.
- D. 25 But whoso looketh into the perfect law of liberty, and continueth therein, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man shall be blessed in his deed.
- E. 26 If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion is vain.
- F. 27 Pure religion and undefiled before God and the Father is this, To visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, and to keep himself unspotted from the world.

IV. We Progress in the Ability to Assimilate the Word of God

- A. The word never changes, but we grow in grace and our ability to understand.
- B. Knowledge is built upon knowledge – we are always learning.
- C. Doing what was learned is key to moving forward.
- D. The word is likened to the following:
 - *Precepts* – the first and weightier commandments of the New Testament.
 - *Milk* – necessary for newborn babes in Christ and for general consumption. Good for all. Milk goes well with bread and meat. Helps to digest and is always compatible with higher teaching, never contradicting. 1 Peter 2:2.
 - *Bread* – used every day. Necessary for life. Daily Bible reading and meditating on the word of God. Matthew 4:4.
 - *Meat* – Higher level study and revelation from the word of God. Precepts and milk must be processed first. Meat must be “rightly divided” for bite-sized consuming of students or even for the teacher when study large subjects. 1 Corinthians 3:2; 2 Timothy 2:15.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- *Light* – Light is used to make manifest. Helps in study to show the truth of a subject being studied (inductive study). Ephesians 5:13.
 - *Water* – All living things require water. Ephesians 5, Isaiah 55:11
- E. See also Lesson 23 Nutrition

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 31: The Retention of the Word of God

I. The Wisdom of Keeping the Word of God

- A. Luke 6:46 – And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and do not the things which I say?
- B. 47 Whosoever cometh to me, and heareth my sayings, and doeth them, I will shew you to whom he is like:
- C. 48 He is like a man which built an house, and digged deep, and laid the foundation on a rock: and when the flood arose, the stream beat vehemently upon that house, and could not shake it: for it was founded upon a rock.
- D. 49 But he that heareth, and doeth not, is like a man that without a foundation built an house upon the earth; against which the stream did beat vehemently, and immediately it fell; and the ruin of that house was great.

II. The Promise of Keeping the Word of God

- A. John 8:51 – Verily, verily, I say unto you, If a man keep my saying, he shall never see death.
- B. 52 Then said the Jews unto him, Now we know that thou hast a devil. Abraham is dead, and the prophets; and thou sayest, If a man keep my saying, he shall never taste of death.
- C. John 15
- D. 10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love.
- E. 20 Remember the word that I said unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they have kept my saying, they will keep yours also.
- F. Revelation 3:8 – I know thy works: behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it: for thou hast a little strength, and hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name.

III. Loving Jesus and Keeping His Word

- A. John 14:15 – If ye love me, keep my commandments.
- B. 23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.

IV. The Do and Teach Principle of the Word of God

- A. Matthew 5:19 – Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.
- B. Acts 1:1 – The former treatise have I made, O Theophilus, of all that Jesus began both to do and teach,
- C. Romans 2:13 – (For not the hearers of the law are just before God, but the doers of the law shall be justified.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

D. James 1:22 – But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.

V. Some Old Testament Mentions

- A. Genesis 26:5 – Because that Abraham obeyed my voice, and kept my charge, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws.
- B. 1 Kings 11:11 – Wherefore the LORD said unto Solomon, Forasmuch as this is done of thee, and thou hast not kept my covenant and my statutes, which I have commanded thee, I will surely rend the kingdom from thee, and will give it to thy servant.
- C. Ezekiel 18:9 – Hath walked in my statutes, and hath kept my judgments, to deal truly; he is just, he shall surely live, saith the Lord GOD.

VI. Blessings

- A. Psalms 119:11 – Thy word have I hid in mine heart, that I might not sin against thee.
- B. Proverbs 3:1 – My son, forget not my law; but let thine heart keep my commandments:
- C. 3 Let not mercy and truth forsake thee: bind them about thy neck; write them upon the table of thine heart:
- D. 5 Trust in the LORD with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding.
- E. Proverbs 4:4 – He taught me also, and said unto me, Let thine heart retain my words: keep my commandments, and live.
- F. Deuteronomy 6:6 – And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart:
- G. 7 And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
- H. 8 And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes.
- I. 9 And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.
- J. Deuteronomy 11:18 – Therefore shall ye lay up these my words in your heart and in your soul, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes.
- K. 19 And ye shall teach them your children, speaking of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.
- L. 20 And thou shalt write them upon the door posts of thine house, and upon thy gates:
- M. 21 That your days may be multiplied, and the days of your children, in the land which the LORD swore unto your fathers to give them, as the days of heaven upon the earth.
- N. 22 For if ye shall diligently keep all these commandments which I command you, to do them, to love the LORD your God, to walk in all his ways, and to cleave unto him;
- O. 23 Then will the LORD drive out all these nations from before you, and ye shall possess greater nations and mightier than yourselves.

VII. Being Stewards

- A. 1 Corinthians 4:1 – Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- B. 2 Moreover it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful.
- C. Titus 1:7 – For a bishop must be blameless, as the steward of God; not selfwilled, not soon angry, not given to wine, no striker, not given to filthy lucre;
- D. 1 Peter 4:10 – As every man hath received the gift, even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 32: Having Vision in Respect to the Scriptures

I. Having a High Vision

- A. Having God's Visio
- B. Isaiah 6:1 – In the year that king Uzziah died I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.
- C. Isaiah 55:9 – For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are my ways higher than your ways, and my thoughts than your thoughts.
- D. John.3
- E. 14 – And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:
- F. Hebrews 7:26 – For such a high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens;
- G. John 4:34 – Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work.
- H. 35 Say not ye, There are yet four months, and then cometh harvest? behold, I say unto you, Lift up your eyes, and look on the fields; for they are white already to harvest.
- I. 36 And he that reapeth receiveth wages, and gathereth fruit unto life eternal: that both he that soweth and he that reapeth may rejoice together.
- J. 37 And herein is that saying true, One soweth, and another reapeth.
- K. 38 I sent you to reap that whereon ye bestowed no labour: other men laboured, and ye are entered into their labours.
- L. Hebrews 12:2 – Looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

II. Having a Long Vision

- A. Acts 15:18 – Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.
- B. Matthew 28:20 – Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.
- C. Titus 1:5 – For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee:
- D. 2 Corinthians 2:14 – Now thanks be unto God, which always causeth us to triumph in Christ, and maketh manifest the savour of his knowledge by us in every place.
- E. 2 Corinthians 9:8 – And God is able to make all grace abound toward you; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all things, may abound to every good work:
- F. Isaiah 40:31 – But they that wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.
- G. 1 John 3:1 – Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.
- H. 2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.
- I. 3 And every man that hath this hope in him purifieth himself, even as he is pure.
- J. Romans 14:10 – But why dost thou judge thy brother? or why dost thou set at nought thy

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- brother? for we shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ.
- K. 2 Corinthians 5:10 – For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.
 - L. 2 Peter 3:11 – Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness,
 - M. 12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?
 - N. 13 Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.
 - O. 14 Wherefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, be diligent that ye may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless.

III. Having a World Vision

- A. World distribution of the word of God.
- B. Matthew 5:14 – Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.
- C. Matthew 24:14 – And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.
- D. Matthew 28:20 – Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.
- E. Mark 14:9 – Verily I say unto you, Wheresoever this gospel shall be preached throughout the whole world, this also that she hath done shall be spoken of for a memorial of her.
- F. Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

IV. Example of Abraham

- A. Romans 4:13 For the promise, that he should be the heir of the world, was not to Abraham, or to his seed, through the law, but through the righteousness of faith.
- B. 14 For if they which are of the law be heirs, faith is made void, and the promise made of none effect:
- C. 15 Because the law worketh wrath: for where no law is, there is no transgression.
- D. 16 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end the promise might be sure to all the seed; not to that only which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all,
- E. 17 (As it is written, I have made thee a father of many nations,) before him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were.
- F. 18 Who against hope believed in hope, that he might become the father of many nations; according to that which was spoken, So shall thy seed be.
- G. 19 And being not weak in faith, he considered not his own body now dead, when he was about an hundred years old, neither yet the deadness of Sara's womb:
- H. 20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God;
- I. 21 And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.
- J. 22 And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- K. 23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him;
- L. 24 But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;
- M. 25 Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 33: Collection of the Scriptures

I. God Directed the Preservation and Collection of the Scriptures

- A. Canonicity determined by four things listed in points below.
- B. 39 Old Testament Books (Jews numbered the same books as 22)
- C. 27 New Testament Books
- D. Books regarded by God's people as divinely inspired
- E. Books determined by their divine qualities
- F. Books determined by Apostolic connection – either by authorship or association
- G. Books determined by their reception of God's people
- H. There are historical, theological, and spiritual considerations.

II. Apostolicity

- A. Written by a prophet
- B. Written by an apostle
- C. Recording a prophet
- D. Recording an apostle
- E. Ephesians 4:11 – And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;
- F. 12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:

III. Orthodoxy

- A. All the scriptures complement each other.
- B. No scripture contradicts any other scripture.
- C. Scriptures have been proved for over 3,000 years to show they are the word of God.
- D. Mark 13:31 – Heaven and earth shall pass away: but my words shall not pass away.

IV. Antiquity

- A. The timing as to when the books were written.
- B. The time the books have been in use attests to the validity of scripture.

V. Ecclesiology

- A. Witness of the Holy Ghost
- B. Usage by the churches of Jesus Christ
- C. Preservation by God's people – they do not preserve that which they do not consider inspired writings.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

VI. Prophecy Attests to Inspiration of Certain Books

- A. The fulfilment of prophecy is a testimony to the inspiration of God.
- B. Prophets of the Old Testament.
- C. Prophecies in the New Testament still to be fulfilled.

VII. Witness of Jesus and Others

- A. Luke 24:44 – And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.
- B. John 5:39 – Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.
- C. Multiple quotations of the Old Testament in the New Testament. Below shows the 25 New Testament book and number of Old Testament quotations.
 - The Gospel of Matthew – 96
 - The Gospel of Mark – 34
 - The Gospel of Luke – 58
 - The Gospel of John – 40
 - Acts of the Apostles – 57
 - Romans – 74
 - 1 Corinthians – 41
 - 2 Corinthians – 13
 - Galatians – 16
 - Ephesians – 11
 - Philippians – 3
 - Colossians – 3
 - 1 Thessalonians – 2
 - 2 Thessalonians – 2
 - 1 Timothy – 6
 - 2 Timothy – 2
 - Hebrews – 86
 - James – 16
 - 1 Peter – 20
 - 2 Peter – 10
 - 1 John – 6
 - Revelation – 249
- D. Peter testified to Paul's Authority – 2 Peter 3:15 – And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you;
- E. 16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.

VIII. Deuterocanonical Books (not Inspired)

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

DEUTEROCANONICAL BOOKS			
1	Letter of Jeremiah	Greek	
2	Psalms 151	Hebrew (DSS) then Greek	
3	1 Esdras	Greek	
4	Sirach (Ecclesiasticus)	Hebrew then Greek in Septuagint	Written 200 to 175 BC, by the Jewish scribe Ben Sira of Jerusalem
5	Tobit	probably Aramaic	
6	Wisdom of Solomon	Greek	
7	Judith	Greek	
8	2 Maccabees	Greek	
9	1 Maccabees	Greek	No Hebrew manuscripts. Found in codices of Septuagint: Sinaiticus, Alexandrinus, and Vaticanus.
10	Additions to Daniel	Greek	
11	Prayer of Manasseh	Greek	
12	Baruch	Greek	
13	3 Maccabees	Greek	
14	Additions to Esther	Greek	
15	4 Maccabees	Greek	
16	2 Esdras	Latin	
17	Odes	Greek Codex Alexandrinus	

IX. Apocryphal Books

- A. The Books of the so-called Apocrypha
- B. 1 Esdras
- C. The portion of 2 Esdras called the "Prayer of Manasseh"
- D. Tobit
- E. Judith
- F. Portions of Esther
- G. Wisdom of Solomon
- H. Wisdom of Sirach (Ecclesiasticus)
- I. Baruch
- J. Epistle of Jeremiah
- K. The portions of Daniel:
- L. Song of the Three Children
- M. Susanna
- N. Bel and the Dragon
- O. Psalm 151

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- P. I Maccabees
- Q. II Maccabees
- R. III Maccabees
- S. IV Maccabees

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 34: The Translation of the Word of God

I. Translation is a Method Used by God

- A. Colossians 1:13 – Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:
- B. Hebrews 11:5 – By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God.
- C. 1 Corinthians 14:5 – I would that ye all spake with tongues, but rather that ye prophesied: for greater is he that prophesieth than he that speaketh with tongues, except he interpret, that the church may receive edifying.
- D. 13 Wherefore let him that speaketh in an unknown tongue pray that he may interpret.

II. Translations Can be Inspired

- A. New Testament quoting Old Testament
- B. Inspired paraphrases by inspired writers
- C. 1 Corinthians 14:18 – I thank my God, I speak with tongues more than ye all:
- D. Aramaic translations in the New Testament – See Lesson 42

III. The Holy Ghost God Gave the Gift of Tongues to Preach the Word of God

- A. Acts 2:6 – Now when this was noised abroad, the multitude came together, and were confounded, because that every man heard them speak in his own language.
- B. 7 And they were all amazed and marvelled, saying one to another, Behold, are not all these which speak Galilaeans?
- C. 8 And how hear we every man in our own tongue, wherein we were born?
- D. 9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and the dwellers in Mesopotamia, and in Judaea, and Cappadocia, in Pontus, and Asia,
- E. 10 Phrygia, and Pamphylia, in Egypt, and in the parts of Libya about Cyrene, and strangers of Rome, Jews and proselytes,
- F. 11 Cretes and Arabians, we do hear them speak in our tongues the wonderful works of God.
- G. 1 Corinthians 12:10 – To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues:

IV. Commandments in Respect to Giving the Word of God in Different Languages

- A. Mark 16:15 – And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.
- B. 2 Corinthians 10:16 – To preach the gospel in the regions beyond you, and not to boast in another man's line of things made ready to our hand.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- C. Romans 16:26 – But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:
- D. Acts 1:8 – But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 35: The Distribution of the Scriptures

I. The Distribution of the Word of God is Commanded

- A. Romans 16:25 – Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,
- B. 26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:
- C. 27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.

II. The Word of God is to be Freely Distributed

- A. God gave the word
- B. Psalm 68:11 – The Lord gave the word: great was the company of those that published it.
- C. Matthew 10:8 – Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely ye have received, freely give.
- D. Romans 8:32 – He that spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how shall he not with him also freely give us all things?
- E. 1 Corinthians 2:12 – Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.
- F. 2 Corinthians 11:7 – Have I committed an offence in abasing myself that ye might be exalted, because I have preached to you the gospel of God freely?
- G. Revelation 21:6 – And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.
- H. Revelation 22:17 – And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.

III. The Scriptures Show Jesus Christ

- A. Acts 18:28 – For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publickly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.
- B. 1 Peter 1:22 – Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, see that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently:
- C. 23 Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.
- D. 24 For all flesh is as grass, and all the glory of man as the flower of grass. The grass withereth, and the flower thereof falleth away:
- E. 25 But the word of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the word which by the gospel is preached unto you.

IV. God Wants All Men to Be Saved

- A. 1 Timothy 2:1 – I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions,

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

and giving of thanks, be made for all men;

- B. 2 For kings, and for all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.
- C. 3 For this is good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour;
- D. 4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 36: The Liberation of the Word of God

I. The Truth Makes You Free

- A. John 8:32 – And ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.
- B. 36 If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.
- C. Free from sin
- D. Romans 3:24 – Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:
- E. Romans 6:18 – Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.
- F. 22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life.
- G. Free from religion – Romans 10:4 – For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.
- H. Free from the Law
- I. Romans 8:2 – For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.
- J. Galatians 5:1 – Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the yoke of bondage.
- K. Hebrews 2:14 – Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;
- L. 15 And deliver them who through fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage.

II. The Word of God to Have Free Course

- A. 2 Thessalonians 3:1 – Finally, brethren, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may have free course, and be glorified, even as it is with you:
- B. Revelation 21:6 – And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely.
- C. Revelation 22:17 – And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.

III. The Word of God Frees the Mind

- A. God has given us a sound mind – 2 Timothy 1:7 – For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.
- B. Free from fear
- C. Romans 8:15 – For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.
- D. 2 Timothy 1:7 – For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.
- E. Free from false beliefs and superstition
- F. Acts 17:22 – Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars' hill, and said, Ye men of Athens, I perceive that in all things ye are too superstitious.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

IV. **Pulling Down of Strongholds**

- A. 2 Corinthians 10:3 – For though we walk in the flesh, we do not war after the flesh:
- B. 4 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;)
- C. 5 Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;
- D. 6 And having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience, when your obedience is fulfilled.
- E. 7 Do ye look on things after the outward appearance? If any man trust to himself that he is Christ's, let him of himself think this again, that, as he is Christ's, even so are we Christ's.
- F. 8 For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed:
- G. 9 That I may not seem as if I would terrify you by letters.

V. **Believers are Delivered**

- A. Romans 7:6 – But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter.
- B. 2 Corinthians 1:10 – Who delivered us from so great a death, and doth deliver: in whom we trust that he will yet deliver us;
- C. Galatians 1:4 – Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father:
- D. Colossians 1:13 – Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son:
- E. 1 Thessalonians 1:10 – And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 37: The Corruption and Perversion of the Word of God

I. Corruption of the Word of God

- A. *Corruption of the Word of God by **taking away** words from the word of God*
Genesis 3:1 – Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?
- B. *Corruption of the word of God by **adding words** to the word of God*
2 And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:
3 But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.
- C. *Corruption by **denying** the truth of the word of God*
4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:
5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.
- D. *Corruption by **disobeying** the word of God*
6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

II. Many Have Corrupted the Word of God

- A. 2 Corinthians 2:17 – For we are not as many, which corrupt the word of God: but as of sincerity, but as of God, in the sight of God speak we in Christ.
- B. Matthew 23:23 – Woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye pay tithe of mint and anise and cummin, and have omitted the weightier matters of the law, judgment, mercy, and faith: these ought ye to have done, and not to leave the other undone.
- C. Revelation 22:18 – For I testify unto every man that heareth the words of the prophecy of this book, If any man shall add unto these things, God shall add unto him the plagues that are written in this book:
- D. 19 And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.

III. Not Handling the Word of God Deceitfully

- A. 2 Corinthians 4:1 – Therefore seeing we have this ministry, as we have received mercy, we faint not;
- B. 2 But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God.
- C. 3 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost:
- D. 4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- E. 5 For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; and ourselves your servants for Jesus' sake.
- F. 6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

IV. Commandments in Respect to the Word of God

- A. Deuteronomy 4:2 – Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish ought from it, that ye may keep the commandments of the Lord your God which I command you.

V. Perversion of the Word of God

- A. *Replacing God's word with Man's Word*
Jeremiah 23:36 – And the burden of the Lord shall ye mention no more: for every man's word shall be his burden; for ye have perverted the words of the living God, of the Lord of hosts our God.
Deuteronomy 18:20 – But the prophet, which shall presume to speak a word in my name, which I have not commanded him to speak, or that shall speak in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die.
- B. Poor translations of good texts
- C. Good translations of corrupt texts
- D. Too much paraphrasing
- E. Changing words
- F. *Blaspheming the word of God*
Titus 2:5 – To be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed.

VI. A Tree is Known by its Fruit

- A. Matthew 7:15 – Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.
- B. 16 Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?
- C. 17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.
- D. 18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.
- E. 19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.
- F. 20 Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 38: The Pollution of the Word of God

I. Pollution as Found in the Old Testament Scriptures

- A. Exodus 20:25 – And if thou wilt make me an altar of stone, thou shalt not build it of hewn stone: for if thou lift up thy tool upon it, thou hast polluted it.
- B. Number 18:32 – And ye shall bear no sin by reason of it, when ye have heaved from it the best of it: neither shall ye pollute the holy things of the children of Israel, lest ye die.
- C. Numbers 35:33 – So ye shall not pollute the land wherein ye are: for blood it defileth the land: and the land cannot be cleansed of the blood that is shed therein, but by the blood of him that shed it.
- D. 2 Kings 23:16 – And as Josiah turned himself, he spied the sepulchres that were there in the mount, and sent, and took the bones out of the sepulchres, and burned them upon the altar, and polluted it, according to the word of the LORD which the man of God proclaimed, who proclaimed these words.
- E. 2 Chronicles 36:14 – Moreover all the chief of the priests, and the people, transgressed very much after all the abominations of the heathen; and polluted the house of the LORD which he had hallowed in Jerusalem.
- F. Ezra 2:62 – These sought their register among those that were reckoned by genealogy, but they were not found: therefore were they, as polluted, put from the priesthood.
- G. Nehemiah 7:64 These sought their register among those that were reckoned by genealogy, but it was not found: therefore were they, as polluted, put from the priesthood.
- H. Psalm 106:38 – And shed innocent blood, even the blood of their sons and of their daughters, whom they sacrificed unto the idols of Canaan: and the land was polluted with blood.
- I. Jeremiah 2:23 – How canst thou say, I am not polluted, I have not gone after Baalim? see thy way in the valley, know what thou hast done: thou art a swift dromedary traversing her ways;
- J. Jeremiah 3:1 – They say, If a man put away his wife, and she go from him, and become another man's, shall he return unto her again? shall not that land be greatly polluted? but thou hast played the harlot with many lovers; yet return again to me, saith the LORD.
- K. 2 Lift up thine eyes unto the high places, and see where thou hast not been lien with. In the ways hast thou sat for them, as the Arabian in the wilderness; and thou hast polluted the land with thy whoredoms and with thy wickedness.
- L. Zephaniah 3:1 – Woe to her that is filthy and polluted, to the oppressing city!
- M. 4 Her prophets are light and treacherous persons: her priests have polluted the sanctuary, they have done violence to the law.
- N. Malachi 1:7 – Ye offer polluted bread upon mine altar; and ye say, Wherein have we polluted thee? In that ye say, The table of the LORD is contemptible.
- O. 12 But ye have profaned it, in that ye say, The table of the LORD is polluted; and the fruit thereof, even his meat, is contemptible.

II. Pollutions as Found in the New Testament Scriptures

- A. Acts 15:20 – But that we write unto them, that they abstain from pollutions of idols, and from fornication, and from things strangled, and from blood.
- B. 2 Peter 2:20 – For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning.

III. Pollution is Making Something Holy Impure by Adding to it That which is Evil

- A. God is holy.
- B. Jesus is Holy.
- C. The Holy Ghost is holy.
- D. The things of God are holy.
- E. The word of God is holy
- F. 2 Peter 2:20 – For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, the latter end is worse with them than the beginning.
- G. 21 For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.

IV. Things That Pollute and That which can be Polluted

- A. A tool upon an altar stone (man's work) pollutes the altar.
- B. Not of the best being offered to the Lord pollutes the offering.
- C. Blood shed in the land pollutes the land.
- D. Offering unrighteous things on an altar pollute the altar.
- E. Idolatry pollutes the house of the Lord.
- F. Intermarriage with the heathen polluted the priestly genealogy of some.
- G. Returning to a divorced wife after she remarried pollutes the land.
- H. Whoredoms and wickedness pollute the land.
- I. Offering polluted bread upon the altar pollutes the Lord's offering.

V. Some Pollute the Word of God by Adding to It

- A. 2 Corinthians 11:4 – For if he that cometh preacheth another Jesus, whom we have not preached, or if ye receive another spirit, which ye have not received, or another gospel, which ye have not accepted, ye might well bear with him.
- B. Galatians 1:6 – I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ unto another gospel:
- C. Another gospel – adding works to be saved
- D. Another Jesus – adding imperfection or non-deity to Jesus.
- E. Another Spirit – making the Holy Ghost an unclean or unholy spirit.

VI. Adding Non-Canonical Books as Inspired Writings Pollutes the Word of God

- A. Apocrypha – saying they are inspired.
- B. Deuterocanonical books – saying they are inspired.
- C. Adding man's word to the Bible pollutes the Bible
- D. Other *Pseudepigrapha* (also anglicized as “pseudepigraph” or “pseudepigraphs”) are

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

falsely attributed works, texts whose claimed author is not the true author, or a work whose real author attributed it to a figure of the past.

VII. Every Word of God is Pure

- A. Proverbs 30:5 – Every word of God is pure: he is a shield unto them that put their trust in him.
- B. The word of God is *sincere* milk.
- C. 1 Peter 2:2 – As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that ye may grow thereby:
- D. Sincere is akin to being without offense – Philippians 1:10 – That ye may approve things that are excellent; that ye may be sincere and without offence till the day of Christ;
- E. 16 The one preach Christ of contention, not sincerely, supposing to add affliction to my bonds:
- F. *Sincere* means pure, unadulterated, guileless, genuine. Greek word *adolos* means (Strong's 97) *ádolos* (an adjective, derived from 1 /A “without” and 1388 /dólos, “bait, deceit”) – properly, not-caught (in a trap), referring to being free from fraud (trickery, deceit); without craftiness (hidden, “mixed motives”).
- G. In the papyri means “unfalsified” and is also used of unmixed liquids, free from adulteration or fraudulent claim.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 39: The Church's Responsibility in Respect to the Word of God

I. New Testament Churches are the Pillar and Ground of the Truth

- A. 1 Timothy 3:15 – But if I tarry long, that thou mayest know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.

II. New Testament Churches to Receive and Keep the Word of God

- A. Thessalonian church
- B. 1 Thessalonians 2:13 – For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.
- C. Philadelphia church
- D. Revelation 3:7 – And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy, he that is true, he that hath the key of David, he that openeth, and no man shutteth; and shutteth, and no man openeth;
- E. 8 I know thy works: behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it: for thou hast a little strength, and hast kept my word, and hast not denied my name.
- F. 9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee.
- G. 10 Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth.
- H. 11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.
- I. 12 Him that overcometh will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name.
- J. 13 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

III. New Testament Churches to Obey the Word of God

- A. Philippians 2:12 – Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.
- B. 2 Thessalonians 1:8 – In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:
- C. 2 Thessalonians 3:14 – And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed.
- D. Hebrew 13:17 – Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you.
- E. 1 Peter 1:22 – Seeing ye have purified your souls in obeying the truth through the Spirit unto unfeigned love of the brethren, see that ye love one another with a pure heart fervently:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

IV. New Testament Churches to Copy and Distribute the Word of God

- A. Romans 16:25 – Now to him that is of power to stablish you according to my gospel, and the preaching of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery, which was kept secret since the world began,
- B. 26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith:
- C. 27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ for ever. Amen.
- D. Publish
- E. Distribute

V. New Testament Churches to Teach the Word of God to the World

- A. Matthew 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.
- B. 19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:
- C. 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

VI. New Testament Church Leaders to be Dedicated to the Ministry of the Word

- A. Acts 6:4 – But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the word.
- B. Teach – 1 Timothy 6:2
- C. Preach – 2 Timothy 4:2
- D. Read – 1 Timothy 4:13
- E. Doctrine – 1 Timothy 4:13
- F. Evangelist – 2 Timothy 4:5
- G. Study – 2 Timothy 2:15
- H. Parchments – 2 Timothy 4:13

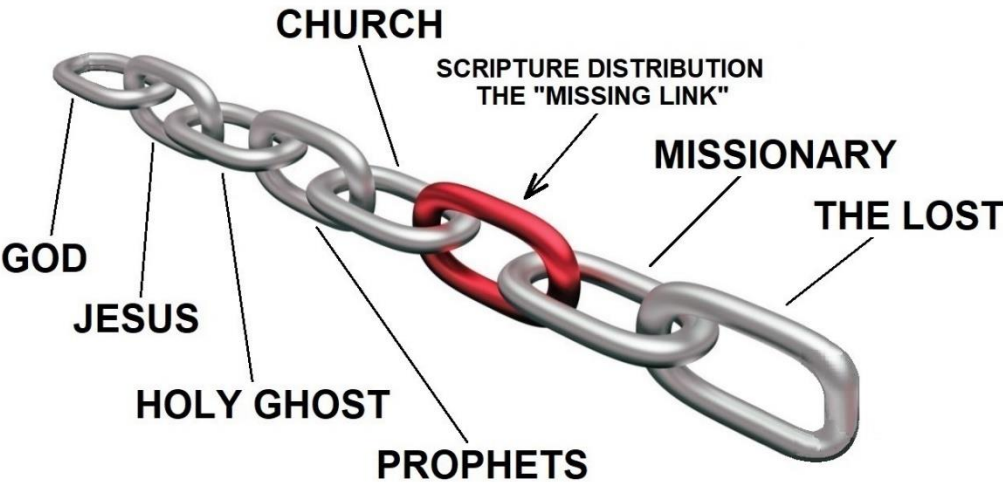
VII. Where Churches Typically Fail

- A. Using modernists' versions for teaching and preaching
- B. Correcting the word of God
- C. Replacing doctrine with tradition

VIII. Churches Should Not Break the Chain of Custody

- A. The Chain of Custody of the Scriptures Broken by the Churches

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES



CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 40: Contrasting Thoughts

I. Notice the Two Sides:

- A. Two Lines or Two Families of Scriptures
- B. Two sources for printing – Believers or publishing houses
- C. Two organizations – Church or world
- D. Two thoughts – inspiration or scholarship
- E. Two agents for publishing – God’s people or lost people
- F. Two meanings of preservation – original autographs only or reliable copies
- G. Two views of translation – God’s people or scholarship
- H. Two positions on the English – KJV or anything else
- I. Two positions on KJV – contains the word of God or is the word of God (inerrant)
- J. Two works on KJV – fight about it or publish it for free distribution
- K. Two reactions to hard verses – God’s word is always right or there must be a mistake
- L. Two processes in Scripture study – add to and take away or multiply and rightly divide
- M. Old Testament – MT or LXX
- N. New Testament – TR or Vaticanus

II. Contrasting Things:

- A. Apocrypha
- B. Septuagint
- C. Vaticanus
- D. Textus Receptus
- E. Two Men and their Influence – Erasmus or Origen
- F. Two places were sources for bibles – Alexandria or Antioch

III. The World Contrasted to God

- A. Salvation: Works vs. Faith
- B. Salvation: Selection vs. Whosoever
- C. Salvation: Pride vs. Humility
- D. Religion: Bondage vs. Liberty
- E. Religion: Force vs. Love
- F. Religion: Hypocrisy vs. Doers of the Word

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 41: The Profit of the Scriptures

I. All Scripture is given by Inspiration of God and Profitable for...

- A. Doctrine (the Precepts of Jesus)
- B. Reproof (Proving and shedding light)
- C. Correction (Punishment and chastisement)
- D. Instruction in Righteousness (Purifying)
- E. Perfection (Perfecting)
- F. Thoroughly furnished unto all good works (Preparation)

II. Scriptures also Profitable for...

- A. Knowing **Person** of God and Jesus Christ (Salvation)
- B. Learning the **Precepts** of Jesus Christ (see 3 above)
- C. Preaching the **Power** of God unto Salvation (the Gospel, Creation, Romans 1:16)
- D. Having the **Prioritization** of Life (Seeking first Kingdom of God)
- E. Enjoying the **Provision** of God (Not Bread Only, Meat, Milk, Grow thereby)
- F. Understanding the **Principles** of God (Laws of God)
- G. Believing the **Promises** of God
- H. Obtaining **Prudence** for life (Wisdom, Understanding, Knowledge)
- I. The **Perfecting** of the Saints (see 17 above)
- J. Heeding the **Precautions** and Warnings of sin and disobedience
- K. Effective **Prayers** (Knowing how to Pray)
- L. Having the **Peace** of God (Love thy Law)
- M. **Purifying** the Believer (Holiness – see also 6 above; Ephesians 5)
- N. Knowing **Path** of Life that one should follow
- O. **Provoking** Encouragement and Love (Comfort and Hope of the Scriptures)
- P. **Publishing** the Gospel to all Nations (Romans 16:26)
- Q. **Preaching** the word (Jesus Christ, etc.) washing of water by the word
- R. **Positive** Speech and Godly Edifying (building up, Acts 20, Jude)
- S. Singing of **Psalms**, Hymns, and Spiritual Songs
- T. The **Parables**
- U. The **Proverbs**
- V. The **Prophecy**
- W. Knowing the **Past** History of God's Workings
- X. Seeing the character of **People** (some did well, some did evil)
- Y. Godly **Parenting** (Nurture and Admonition of the Lord)
- Z. Preventing **Problems** and showing their Solutions
- AA. Enjoying **Prosperity** (as one Soul Prospers, having Right Wealth, Avoiding Poverty, Labor, etc.)

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 42: The Use of Translations

I. The Bible Quotes in Other Languages in Some Places.

- A. Syriac
- B. Aramaic
- C. Hebrew
- D. Arabic

II. Aramaic to Greek

- A. Among the Jews, Aramaic was used by the common people, while Hebrew remained the language of religion and Jewish government and of the upper class.
- B. Greek was the language of culture, business, and education.
- C. Latin was the Roman government official language.

III. Old Testament Examples:

- A. Ezra 4:7 – And in the days of Artaxerxes wrote Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions, unto Artaxerxes king of Persia; and the writing of the letter was written in the Syrian tongue, and interpreted in the Syrian tongue.
- B. See verses 8-22 for the letter.
- C. Daniel 2:4 – Then spake the Chaldeans to the king in Syriack, O king, live for ever: tell thy servants the dream, and we will shew the interpretation.

IV. New Testament Examples

- A. Matthew 27:33 – And when they were come unto a place called Golgotha [Aramaic], that is to say, a place of a skull,
- B. 46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani [Aramaic]? that is to say, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?
- C. Mark 5:41 – And he took the damsel by the hand, and said unto her, Talitha cumi [Aramaic]; which is, being interpreted, Damsel, I say unto thee, arise.
- D. Mark 7:34 – And looking up to heaven, he sighed, and saith unto him, Ephphatha [Aramaic], that is, Be opened.
- E. Mark 15:22 – And they bring him unto the place Golgotha [Aramaic], which is, being interpreted, The place of a skull.
- F. Mark 15:34 – And at the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani [Aramaic]? which is, being interpreted, My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?

V. Other Translations

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. Matthew 1:23 – Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel [Hebrew], which being interpreted is, God with us.
- B. Mark 7:11 – But ye say, If a man shall say to his father or mother, It is Corban [Hebrew], that is to say, a gift, by whatsoever thou mightest be profited by me; he shall be free.
- C. John 1:38 Then Jesus turned, and saw them following, and saith unto them, What seek ye? They said unto him, Rabbi [Hebrew], (which is to say, being interpreted, Master,) where dwellest thou?
- D. 41 He first findeth his own brother Simon, and saith unto him, We have found the Messias [Hebrew], which is, being interpreted, the Christ.
- E. 42 And he brought him to Jesus. And when Jesus beheld him, he said, Thou art Simon the son of Jona: thou shalt be called Cephas [Hebrew], which is by interpretation, A stone.
- F. John 9:7 – And said unto him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam [Hebrew], (which is by interpretation, Sent.) He went his way therefore, and washed, and came seeing.
- G. John 19:20 – This title then read many of the Jews: for the place where Jesus was crucified was nigh to the city: and it was written in Hebrew, and Greek, and Latin.
- H. Acts 4:36 – And Joses, who by the apostles was surnamed Barnabas [Aramaic to Greek], (which is, being interpreted, The son of consolation,) a Levite, and of the country of Cyprus,
- I. Acts 9:36 – Now there was at Joppa a certain disciple named Tabitha [Aramaic to Greek], which by interpretation is called Dorcas [Gazelle]: this woman was full of good works and almsdeeds which she did.
- J. Acts 13:8 – But Elymas [Arabic origin] the sorcerer (for so is his name by interpretation) withstood them, seeking to turn away the deputy from the faith.
- K. Hebrew 7:1 – For this Melchisedec [Hebrew], king of Salem, priest of the most high God, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, and blessed him;
- L. 2 To whom also Abraham gave a tenth part of all; first being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that also King of Salem, which is, King of peace;
- M. Revelation 9:11 – And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 43: Examples of Corruption

I. Examples of Additions:

Mark 16:20

King James Bible – And they went forth, and preached every where, the Lord working with them, and confirming the word with signs following. Amen.

New American Standard Bible – And they went out and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them, and confirmed the word by the signs that followed. And they promptly reported all these instructions to Peter and his companions. And after that, Jesus Himself sent out through them from east to west the sacred and imperishable proclamation of eternal salvation.

Mark 1:2

King James Bible – As it is written in the prophets, Behold, I send my messenger before your face, who shall prepare your way before you.

New American Standard Bible – As it is written in Isaiah the prophet: “BEHOLD, I SEND MY MESSENGER AHEAD OF YOU, WHO WILL PREPARE YOUR WAY;

II. Examples of Deletions:

Romans 1:16

King James Bible – For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God unto salvation to every one that believeth; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek.

New American Standard Bible – For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes, to the Jew first and also to the Greek.

Acts 9:5

King James Bible – And he said, Who art thou, Lord? And the Lord said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest: it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks.

New American Standard Bible – And he said, “Who are You, Lord?” And He said, “I am Jesus whom you are persecuting,

1 John 5:7

King James Bible – For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one.

New American Standard Bible – For there are three that testify:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

1 John 5:8

King James Bible – And there are three that bear witness in earth, the spirit, and the water, and the blood: and these three agree in one.

New American Standard Bible – the Spirit and the water and the blood; and the three are in agreement.

Matthew 17:21

King James Bible – Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.

Stephanus Textus Receptus 1550 – τοῦτο δὲ τὸ γένος οὐκ ἐκπορεύεται εἰ μὴ ἐν προσευχῇ καὶ νηστείᾳ

New International Version – [empty]

Westcott and Hort 1881 – [empty]

Mark 9:29

King James Bible – And he said unto them, This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting.

New American Standard Bible – And He said to them, “This kind cannot come out by anything but prayer.”

1 Corinthians 7:5

King James Bible – Defraud ye not one the other, except it be with consent for a time, that ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency.

New American Standard Bible – Stop depriving one another, except by agreement for a time, so that you may devote yourselves to prayer, and come together again so that Satan will not tempt you because of your lack of self-control.

III. Examples of Changes

Revelation 22:14

King James Bible – Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city.

New American Standard Bible – Blessed are those who wash their robes, so that they may have the right to the tree of life, and may enter by the gates into the city.

Revelation 22:19

King James Bible – And if any man shall take away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

New American Standard Bible – and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God will take away his part from the tree of life and from the holy city, which are written in this book.

Luke 2:43

King James Bible – And when they had fulfilled the days, as they returned, the child Jesus tarried behind in Jerusalem; and Joseph and his mother knew not of it.

New American Standard Bible – and as they were returning, after spending the full number of days, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem. But His parents were unaware of it,

IV. Use Class 409 Verse Comparison Chart for More Example

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 44: Jeremiah 23 – Warning to those Who Pervert the Word of God

I. Woe Pronounced unto Evil Pastors

- A. Jeremiah 23:1 – Woe be unto the pastors that destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture! saith the LORD.
- B. 2 Therefore thus saith the LORD God of Israel against the pastors that feed my people; Ye have scattered my flock, and driven them away, and have not visited them: behold, I will visit upon you the evil of your doings, saith the LORD.

II. God's Watch and Care Over His Flock

- A. 3 And I will gather the remnant of my flock out of all countries whither I have driven them, and will bring them again to their folds; and they shall be fruitful and increase.
- B. 4 And I will set up shepherds over them which shall feed them: and they shall fear no more, nor be dismayed, neither shall they be lacking, saith the LORD.
- C. 5 Behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.
- D. 6 In his days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS.
- E. 7 Therefore, behold, the days come, saith the LORD, that they shall no more say, The LORD liveth, which brought up the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt;
- F. 8 But, The LORD liveth, which brought up and which led the seed of the house of Israel out of the north country, and from all countries whither I had driven them; and they shall dwell in their own land.

III. The Profaneness of God's Leaders

- A. 9 Mine heart within me is broken because of the prophets; all my bones shake; I am like a drunken man, and like a man whom wine hath overcome, because of the LORD, and because of the words of his holiness.
- B. 10 For the land is full of adulterers; for because of swearing the land mourneth; the pleasant places of the wilderness are dried up, and their course is evil, and their force is not right.
- C. 11 For both prophet and priest are profane; yea, in my house have I found their wickedness, saith the LORD.
- D. 12 Wherefore their way shall be unto them as slippery ways in the darkness: they shall be driven on, and fall therein: for I will bring evil upon them, even the year of their visitation, saith the LORD.
- E. 13 And I have seen folly in the prophets of Samaria; they prophesied in Baal, and caused my people Israel to err.
- F. 14 I have seen also in the prophets of Jerusalem an horrible thing: they commit adultery, and walk in lies: they strengthen also the hands of evildoers, that none doth return from his wickedness: they are all of them unto me as Sodom, and the inhabitants thereof as Gomorrah.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

IV. The Judgment from God on False Prophets

- A. 15 Therefore thus saith the LORD of hosts concerning the prophets; Behold, I will feed them with wormwood, and make them drink the water of gall: for from the prophets of Jerusalem is profaneness gone forth into all the land.
- B. 16 Thus saith the LORD of hosts, Hearken not unto the words of the prophets that prophesy unto you: they make you vain: they speak a vision of their own heart, and not out of the mouth of the LORD.
- C. 17 They say still unto them that despise me, The LORD hath said, Ye shall have peace; and they say unto every one that walketh after the imagination of his own heart, No evil shall come upon you.
- D. 18 For who hath stood in the counsel of the LORD, and hath perceived and heard his word? who hath marked his word, and heard it?
- E. 19 Behold, a whirlwind of the LORD is gone forth in fury, even a grievous whirlwind: it shall fall grievously upon the head of the wicked.
- F. 20 The anger of the LORD shall not return, until he have executed, and till he have performed the thoughts of his heart: in the latter days ye shall consider it perfectly.
- G. 21 I have not sent these prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied.
- H. 22 But if they had stood in my counsel, and had caused my people to hear my words, then they should have turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings.

V. God Knows All That Transpires

- A. 23 Am I a God at hand, saith the LORD, and not a God afar off?
- B. 24 Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the LORD. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the LORD.
- C. 25 I have heard what the prophets said, that prophesy lies in my name, saying, I have dreamed, I have dreamed.
- D. 26 How long shall this be in the heart of the prophets that prophesy lies? yea, they are prophets of the deceit of their own heart;
- E. 27 Which think to cause my people to forget my name by their dreams which they tell every man to his neighbour, as their fathers have forgotten my name for Baal.

VI. Be Faithful to the Word of God

- A. 28 The prophet that hath a dream, let him tell a dream; and he that hath my word, let him speak my word faithfully. What is the chaff to the wheat? saith the LORD.
- B. 29 Is not my word like as a fire? saith the LORD; and like a hammer that breaketh the rock in pieces?
- C. 30 Therefore, behold, I am against the prophets, saith the LORD, that steal my words every one from his neighbour.
- D. 31 Behold, I am against the prophets, saith the LORD, that use their tongues, and say, He saith.

VII. God is Against and Will Forsake and Punish Those who Pervert the Word of God

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- A. 32 Behold, I am against them that prophesy false dreams, saith the LORD, and do tell them, and cause my people to err by their lies, and by their lightness; yet I sent them not, nor commanded them: therefore they shall not profit this people at all, saith the LORD.
- B. 33 And when this people, or the prophet, or a priest, shall ask thee, saying, What is the burden of the LORD? thou shalt then say unto them, What burden? I will even forsake you, saith the LORD.
- C. 34 And as for the prophet, and the priest, and the people, that shall say, The burden of the LORD, I will even punish that man and his house.
- D. 35 Thus shall ye say every one to his neighbour, and every one to his brother, What hath the LORD answered? and, What hath the LORD spoken?
- E. 36 And the burden of the LORD shall ye mention no more: for every man's word shall be his burden; for ye have perverted the words of the living God, of the LORD of hosts our God.
- F. 37 Thus shalt thou say to the prophet, What hath the LORD answered thee? and, What hath the LORD spoken?
- G. 38 But since ye say, The burden of the LORD; therefore thus saith the LORD; Because ye say this word, The burden of the LORD, and I have sent unto you, saying, Ye shall not say, The burden of the LORD;
- H. 39 Therefore, behold, I, even I, will utterly forget you, and I will forsake you, and the city that I gave you and your fathers, and cast you out of my presence:

VIII. God Brings an Everlasting Reproach and a Perpetual Shame on Perverters of His Word

- A. 40 And I will bring an everlasting reproach upon you, and a perpetual shame, which shall not be forgotten.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Lesson 45: The Blessings of the King James Version of 1611

I. **General Facts and Blessings of the King James Version of 1611**

1. It is the only translation used in English today that follows Bible principles.
2. Translators did not rely on their own scholarship only; they diligently compared previous translations.
3. The work began with 54 men and finished with 47 men. These men were great scholars in the field of Biblical translation.
4. They did not use the common language of 1611, but a pure Anglo-Saxon. A language that was about 70 years old, and was language used in law. This pure language will never be used again.
5. Only the spelling of certain words and the style of the printed letters have been changed since the beginning.
6. The KJV is God-honored, time-tested, soul-saving, Christ-honoring, and believer-building.
7. The KJV has proved itself for over 400 years in souls saved, churches established, and missionaries sent.
8. God has used it. Now English is the world trade language.
9. It is the Bible of militant, separated, independent Baptists.
10. It has withstood criticism for 400 years and still is the number one published book of all time.

II. **Various Papers Written for Commentary**

- A. See below.
- B. *Differences Between the Various Settings of the King James Version*
- C. *Prose Rhythms in the Authorized Version*
- D. *Another Word About the King James Version on its 400 Year Anniversary*

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE VARIOUS SETTINGS OF THE KING JAMES VERSION

N. Sebastian Desent, Ph.D.; Th.D.; D.D.; Pastor, Historic Baptist Church, Rhode Island

February 24, 2013

In respect to our honored *King James Version (KJV)*, we know it has served as the standard translation for over four centuries. Appreciated most by fundamental Baptists and Bible-believers, the Old Black-backed 66 has proved itself to be the perfect, inspired word of God for the English-speaking people.

By this Blessed Book we live. We read it and know it is the inspired word of God. It not only contains the word of God – it is the word of God. We preach it. We study it. We teach it. We raise or families by it. We shall never give it up.

We know this Bible has its scars. It has been attacked, persecuted, mocked, banned, and disregarded – even from its first printing in 1611. Although it has been carefully handled for four centuries by men who love it, these men have their faults. Any preacher who is honest will admit he has erred in his quoting or reading of a verse (we tend to paraphrase the word of God when we cannot rightly remember the exact wording of a verse).

This is not allowable in scripture translation or editing, but it shows we are fallible, even when handling the infallible word of God. And from the first printing – made on antiquated equipment compared to what we have today, F. H. A. Scrivener identified a number of necessary corrections made to the 1611 edition, and the year the changes were made:

- this thing – this thing also (1638)
- shalt have remained – ye shall have remained (1762)
- Achzib, nor Helbath, nor Aphik – of Achzib, nor of Helbath, nor of Aphik (1762)
- requite good – requite me good (1629)
- this book of the Covenant – the book of this covenant (1629)
- chief rulers – chief ruler (1629)
- And Parbar – At Parbar (1638)
- For this cause – And for this cause (1638)
- For the king had appointed – for so the king had appointed (1629)
- Seek good – seek God (1617)
- The cormorant – But the cormorant (1629)
- returned – turned (1769)
- a fiery furnace – a burning fiery furnace (1638)
- The crowned – Thy crowned (1629)
- thy right doeth – thy right hand doeth (1613)
- the wayes side – the way side (1743)
- which was a Jew – which was a Jewess (1629)
- the city – the city of the Damascenes (1629)
- now and ever – both now and ever (1638)
- which was of our father's – which was our fathers (1616)

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Any printing of the word of God, if found to have an error; that error should be immediately corrected, and all unnecessary copies destroyed.

There were minor errors in the printing of the 1611 Bible. Subsequent printings of the King James Version, although correcting previous errors, sometimes introduced new errors, that, in turn, had to be corrected.

And with many publishers over four centuries printing the *Blessed Old Book*, one can only imagine what miracle of God it is that we hold in our hands today. The fact is – except for those obviously poor editions that change words – we have that King James Version God intends for us to have.

Furthermore, we know there has never been a standard edition to which all printings conform (quoting John R. Kohlenberger III):

No two early printings of the KJV were identical—not even the two printings of 1611—and no two modern settings are identical, either. These differences are due to accidental human error as well as to intentional changes by printers and editors, who sought to eliminate what they judged to be the errors of others and to conform the text to their standards of English usage. This said, most differences involve only spelling, punctuation, and italics, and few variations materially affect the meaning of the text.

As early as 1616 there were systematic attempts to revise and standardize the KJV. Other important early editions were issued by Cambridge in 1629 and 1638. In the eighteenth century, the two great English universities (who were also officially chartered printers) commissioned thorough and systematic revisions. The edition of Dr. F. S. Paris was published by Cambridge in 1762 and that of Dr. Benjamin Blayney by Oxford in 1769. Though far from perfect, these remained the standard editions until *The Cambridge Paragraph Bible* of 1873¹.

The Cambridge Paragraph Bible of the Authorized Version, edited by Frederick Henry Ambrose Scrivener, LL.D. (1813 – 1891) and published in 1873 is considered by far the most substantial work on the King James text after 1611, when the version was first published.

F. H. A. Scrivener was exceptionally tedious in his analysis of the various King James settings and devoted himself to producing what he considered how the original texts *should* have been translated, not would have been translated. And, although he restored about a third of the original readings, the Scrivener text should not be considered the certain text of the translators². He should be considered a reviser to the text, making small changes he thought should have been in the original translation.

We do have the original manuscripts of the King James translators. These were either lost or destroyed. And we know the first printing in 1611 had some printing errors. To what extent the printer may have interjected his own textual “errors” (i.e., not following the translator’s manuscripts) is unknown, or at least debatable. So, what learned men have done since 1611 is to make editions that purpose to produce that perfect edition. As with all human endeavors, their work is not always infallible. But we know the word of God is, for God has promised to preserve his inspired word forever. And so, through the centuries of the English Bible, God has cared for and preserved his word.

Whether it be Scrivener or Blayney, or Parris or Tyndale; men’s work has to be checked and proofread and rechecked – I say seven times – to make sure all errors are found and corrected. Any writer knows this.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Some revisions had to correct even words. As already mentioned, whether these words were incorrect because the printer mistyped them, or whether it was a handwritten translation that was wrong, men involved have found and corrected the text. Any person who honors the word of God realizes these changes are indeed corrections, and not an attempt by a scorner to corrupt the word of God. If that was the case, the changes would have likely attacked the deity of our Savior, the precious blood, the holiness of God, or some such thing.

Rick Beckman (quoting Gary F. Zoella's *Differences Between Bible Versions Updated and Expanded Edition*) provided a list of what he considered significant changes made to the KJV, comparing the 1611 to the 1769³:

- 1 Corinthians 12:28 – “helpes in gouernmets” vs. “helps, governments”
- Joshua 3:11 – “Arke of the Couenant, euen the Lord” vs. “ark of the covenant of the Lord”
- 2 Kings 11:10 – “in the Temple” vs. “in the temple of the LORD”
- Isaiah 49:13 – “for God” vs. “for the LORD”
- Jeremiah 31:14 – “with goodnesse” vs. “with my goodness”
- Jeremiah 51:30 – “burnt their dwelling places” vs. “burned her dwellingplaces”
- Ezekiel 6:8 – “that he may” vs. “that ye may”
- Ezekiel 24:5 – “let him seethe” vs. “let them seethe”
- Ezekiel 24:7 – “powred it vpon the ground” vs. “poured it not upon the ground”
- Ezekiel 48:8 – “which they shall” vs. “which ye shall”
- Daniel 3:15 – “a fierie furnace” vs. “a burning fiery furnace”
- Matthew 14:9 – “the othes sake” vs. “the oath's sake”
- 1 Corinthians 15:6 – “And that” vs. “After that”
- 1 John 5:12 – “the Sonne, hath” vs. “the Son of God hath”

This writer is a Bible-believer, and as such these changes do not cause me concern. I do not lose sleep over these nor do I propose to defend one side or the other. I can accept the changes and continue to read, believe, and preach the infallible word of God out of my Oxford Bible (and even some of my Oxford bibles have unintended printing errors) with a fully persuaded heart and mind. I trust God to protect and preserve his word for me.

The Universities of Oxford and Cambridge produced updated texts in the 18th century seeking to standardize the texts. For from the first printing a wide variety of texts – most duplicating misprints – were in circulation. It is similar today; with so many KJV publishers you will find some very poor settings, some even with substantial word changes. Every Bible-believer needs to take care in selecting a good setting of the text, from a proven publisher – one that has done due diligence to select the right text of the King James Version. I added my own quick check at the end of this paper.

Two noteworthy editions of the Authorized Version were Cambridge's edition of 1760 by Francis Sawyer Parris and Oxford's edition of 1769 edited by Benjamin Blayney. The Oxford edition has few differences from the Cambridge edition. The 1769 edition is Oxford's standard text.

Here is an example of one difference, found in Matthew 5:13:

Parris (1760): Ye are the salt of the earth: but if the salt have lost his savour, wherewith shall it be salted? it is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be troden under foot of men.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Blayney (1769) Ye are the salt of the earth: but if the salt have lost its savour, wherewith shall it be salted? it is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of men.

Since 1769, the Blayney edition has remained the standard, and has become the basis for many printings. However, the verse in my Oxford for Matthew 5:13 reads “his.” This shows there were revisions to Oxford’s 1769.

But let us look further into the 1873 edition edited by F. H. A. Scrivener.

For seven years (1866 – 1873) Dr. F. H. A. Scrivener was devoted to his task of standardizing the King James text.

J. R. K. III goes on to write: “Dr. Scrivener compared at least 15 early settings and important revisions, including both settings of 1611; Bibles of 1612, 1613, 1616, 1617, 1629, 1630, 1634, 1638, 1640; and the significant editions of Drs. Paris (1762) and Blayney (1769).”⁴

I know there are writers who either denounce or promote the work of Scrivener. I thank God for some of his work, for he was a prolific writer and very diligent in his involvement with the *Revisers* to record the differences between the *Authorized Version* and the *Revised Version*. If it were not for that, many would falsely believe the *Revised Version* has the same base texts as the *Authorized Version*. He also for the first time identified the Greek texts underlying KJV – after the fact – which causes concern, as he is thought to have omitted some. As to his heart’s motives, I shall leave that to our Savior to judge.

Many highly regard *Scrivener’s Cambridge Paragraph Bible of 1873*, and for good reasons. Allow me to quote at length John R. Kohlenberger III, as he speaks to the work done by Scrivener to standardize the KJV text:

In his 120-page introduction, Dr. Scrivener addressed the various features of the KJV he worked to standardize:

Italic type. Italic type was used in the KJV, as in the Geneva Bible, to indicate words in the English translation that have no exact representative in the original language. Dr. Scrivener, following many earlier scholars, noted that the KJV translators were noticeably inconsistent in their use of italics, sometimes even in the same paragraph and verse. To cite one small pattern from the 1611 edition, Leviticus 11:20 has “upon *all* foure,” while for the same Hebrew 11:21 and 42 have “upon *all* foure,” and 11:27 has “on *all* foure.”

Dr. Scrivener carefully analyzed why italic type was used throughout the KJV, reduced this analysis to 14 major principles, and then applied these principles with meticulous consistency throughout the entire Bible. A substantial portion of the editor’s “seven laborious years” was devoted to this significant improvement.

Punctuation. Later printings of the KJV added a great deal of punctuation to the editions of 1611. Dr. Scrivener restored the major punctuation (periods, colons, parentheses, question marks) of 1611, and used commas and semicolons to help divide longer sentences into more manageable units for reading.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Spelling and capital letters. Spelling of proper names and common words was very fluid in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries: “Inquire” and “enquire” were interchangeable, as were “ceiling,” “cieling,” and “sieling.” Most differences between modern settings of the KJV and early settings involve standardization of spelling.

Dr. Scrivener’s general rule was that whenever a word was spelled more than one way, he conformed all occurrences to the standard spelling of the late nineteenth century. Proper names, on the other hand, vary according to their spelling in the original languages, so “Elijah” throughout 1 and 2 Kings and in Malachi 4:5 becomes “Elias” throughout the New Testament, as in Matthew 11:14 and 17:3. For the benefit of modern readers, three spelling patterns are changed in this edition that are not changed in Scrivener’s edition: twenty-nine occurrences of “mo” and “moe” are conformed to “more”; four occurrences of “unpossible” are conformed to “impossible”; and “neesed” in 2 Kings 4:35 is spelled “sneezed.”

Paragraphs. According to Dr. Scrivener and other scholars, the paragraph marks (¶) were unequally and inconsistently distributed, and they disappear altogether after Acts 20:26. So, while consulted, the original marks were not always followed in *The Cambridge Paragraph Bible*.⁵

Just about any person who desires to seriously study the difference of the settings of the KJV can do so, either by finding the research of others, or by doing the comparison for himself. Bound photocopies of the original 1611 edition are widely available at a very low cost, and these copies can be read with a little effort to figure out the use of letters and the odd (to us) spelling. Most would agree updating the obsolete spellings and letters of that first edition to today’s usage is a welcome improvement.

We know our beloved *Authorized Version* was translated by learned men with powerful testimonies, anti-Catholic sentiments, and they following strict rules for translating. These men honored God and the king and put forth their best efforts. Even so, we know as men, there must be certain small differences based on their peculiar personalities. Some spelled one way, others spelled another way. The KJV translation committees consisted of the following men:

First Westminster Company, translating from Genesis to 2 Kings:

Lancelot Andrewes, John Overall, Hadrian à Saravia, Richard Clarke, John Layfield, Robert Tighe, Francis Burleigh, Geoffrey King, Richard Thomson, William Bedwell;

First Cambridge Company, translated from 1 Chronicles to the Song of Solomon:

Edward Lively, John Richardson, Lawrence Chaderton, Francis Dillingham, Roger Andrewes, Thomas Harrison, Robert Spaulding, Andrew Bing;

First Oxford Company, translated from Isaiah to Malachi:

John Harding, John Rainolds, Thomas Holland, Richard Kilby, Miles Smith, Richard Brett, Daniel Fairclough, William Thorne;

Second Oxford Company, translated the Gospels, Acts of the Apostles, and the Book of Revelation:

Thomas Ravis, George Abbot, Richard Eedes, Giles Tomson, Sir Henry Savile, John Peryn, Ralph Ravens, John Harmar, John Aglionby, Leonard Hutten;

Second Westminster Company, translated the Epistles:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

William Barlow, John Spenser, Roger Fenton, Ralph Hutchinson, William Dakins, Michael Rabbet, Thomas Sanderson.

Second Cambridge Company, translated the Apocrypha:

John Duport, William Branthwaite, Jeremiah Radcliffe, Samuel Ward, Andrew Downes, John Bois, Robert Ward, Thomas Bilson, Richard Bancroft.

Accordingly, it is understandable that there would be differences in spelling, punctuation rules, and italicization.

The printer Robert Barker, an expert in his field as the King's Printer, produced this monumental work, working in reverse print. He would have to read the hand-written manuscripts of the various translators and commit them to type. And as a printer, I understand a typo in the hand-written original has to be fixed every now and then. That, coupled with his own human error, makes that first printed edition – although a miracle of God – likely to have some typographical errors, extending even to omissions, additions, and word changes (Ruth 3:15 – she vs. he).

And since we do not have those original manuscripts the translators turned over to the printer, we have to trust men close to the work to make the call on how a rendering should read.

At this point I should refer the reader to www.BibleProtector.com. My personal thanks go to the editor of this site for his zeal to maintain the standard for the *Authorized Version*, which he identifies as the *Pure Cambridge Edition* (PCE). He puts his money where his mouth is and provides free of charge the KJV text for downloading and printing. The author lists thirteen verses to check that conform to the PCE. These are the verses he lists:

- “Geba” not “Gaba” in Ezra 2:26
- “or Sheba” not “and Sheba” in Joshua 19:2
- “sin” not “sins” in 2 Chronicles 33:19
- “Spirit of God” not “spirit of God” in Job 33:4
- “whom ye” not “whom he” in Jeremiah 34:16
- “Spirit of God” not “spirit of God” in Ezekiel 11:24
- “flieth” not “fleeth” in Nahum 3:16
- “Spirit” not “spirit” in Matthew 4:1
- “further” not “farther” in Matthew 26:39
- “bewrayeth” not “betrayeth” in Matthew 26:73
- “Spirit” not “spirit” in Mark 1:12
- “spirit” not “Spirit” in Acts 11:28
- “spirit” not “Spirit” in 1 John 5:8

This author refers to the site above not to place the PCE above *every* other edition of the KJV, but to show the reader there are purists that promote their perfect standard and make it available. I shall not detract from our Australian brethren's efforts. But I am sure they would not admit that God's inspired and preserved word was not available until AD 2000 when the PCE was made available.

As a fundamental Bible-believing Baptist, I am content with the Oxford Bible. I have preached from it for over 25 years, and with this Bible I have studied, preached the gospel, had souls saved, seen saints edified, built churches, and restored my soul. My Oxford Bible matches some of the PCE verses, but not all. The

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

small differences do not disturb me.

In the end, the blessed text of the *Authorized Version* is preserved for us. The inspired text easily survived human error. Through the centuries God purified that holy text so we have it as it ought to be. We indeed are blessed.

Pastor's Quick Check for the Right Setting of the King James Version

It can be an unsure effort to order Bibles online, or worse, just ask the clerk at a Christian Bookstore for a *King James Bible*. Over the years I have been able to quickly identify what I expect is a good text, and one which I would not buy or use. Just because the cover says *King James* does not mean the printer followed a proved text.

So then, here is what I look for when finding the right King James, in lieu of an extensive verse comparison:

1. Consider the publisher. Publishers that make all kinds of versions that appeal to all kinds of people will not give diligence in selecting their right King James text. They publish to sell, not for righteousness. Publishers like Nelson, Zondervan, and others are notoriously poor publishers of the King James Bible. On the other hand, publishers like Oxford, Cambridge, Trinitarian, Hendrickson, Church, World, and others have published using the right text. Do not just trust the publisher. This is just a good starting place.
2. Look for the "Epistle Dedicatory" in the front of the Bible. Bibles that put forth effort to supply this are following a good pattern.
3. Check the titles of the books, especially "The Epistle of Paul of Apostle to the Hebrews." If the title is simply "Hebrews," it is an incomplete rendering, not following the original translation. This is likely a poor text. Also, the fifth book of the New Testament should read "The Acts of the Apostles"; not simply "Acts."
4. Check for the postscripts at the ends of the Pauline Epistles. At the end of Paul's Epistle to the Hebrews it should read, "Written to the Hebrews from Italy, by Timothy." At the end of First Timothy it should read, "The first to Timothy was written from Laodicea, which is the chiefest city of Phrygia Pacatiana." These are indications the text follows the original version of 1611.
5. Read 2 Timothy 3:17: "That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works." Notice it says "thoroughly," not "thoroughly." "Thoroughly" is a bad rendering.
6. Center column references are usually a dead give-away that it is a good text. I do have many good texts that do not have the center column references, but all the ones I have with the references are fine King James Bibles.

As a final note, this preacher uses an Oxford 1769 Clarendon Minion edition. It is an expensive Bible, but it is the tool of my trade. I have noticed a few "typos" – a missing period, and incomplete printed letter, or a transposed word. However, it is not uncommon to find printing defects in bibles. But even with these printing defects it is still the Bible I trust. Unfortunately, this edition is no longer printed.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

God bless you.

Footnotes:

1. John R. Kohlenberger III, Hendrickson Introduction to their King James Version.
2. A Textual History of the King James Bible, David Norton, page 124.
3. <http://www.rickbeckman.org/kjv-1611-vs-kjv-1769/>
4. John R. Kohlenberger III, Hendrickson Introduction to their King James Version.
5. Ibid.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

PROSE RHYTHMS IN THE AUTHORIZED VERSION

N. Sebastian Desent, Ph.D., Th.D., D.D.; Pastor, Historic Baptist Church, Rhode Island.

January 12, 2010

The *Authorized Version of 1611* (also known as the *King James Version of the Holy Bible*) was uniformly and diligently translated considering the sound and sense of the passages. The forty-seven translators not only translated the scriptures accurately – being the best-learned men of Oxford, Cambridge, and Westminster – but they also were careful to make sure the flow of the translation was conducive to reading, quoting, and memorizing. They were careful to convey from the original tongues the meanings, tones and styles of the writers. They accomplished this by wording the English in such a way that the choice and sounds of words complimented each other, and the rhythm of words reflected the divine inspiration of the very words of God.

The care taken by the *AV* translators to arrange the perfectly-translated words show their reverence and love for the word of God – they gave this Bible an accuracy, beauty, and melody unmatched by any other translation of the Bible. Not only is the *AV* the perfect English Bible, but it is the prime example of beautiful metrically-written English. Not even the writings of Chaucer or Shakespeare come close to the majesty and beauty of the Authorized Version.

Understanding and identifying the different rhythms in the *Authorized Version* will help a student of the Bible, and a preacher of the word, to better emphasize the truth, speak more pleasing to the ear, and improve his homiletic delivery.

An article in *The British Weekly* for December 27, 1956, referring to *Certain Rhythms in the English Bible* by Dr. Lane Cooper (Cornell University Press), it stated: “If preachers, orators and writers would spend a little time noting the rhythms of that version, they would grow discontented with the sentences that please them now.”

The prose in the *Authorized Version* can be defined by these styles and rhythms: dactyls, anapests, spondees, iambus, feet, trochees, etc. The translators were also able to preserve the intent, styles, connotations, etc. of the original inspired words. I will describe the rhythms and other forms below and give some examples for the reader. My hope is that through identifying and studying these things the reader will gain a greater appreciation for the *Authorized Version*.

Definitions and Examples

Prose: Comes from the Latin *prosa*; meaning straightforward. It describes direct and unadorned writing, usually used to convey facts. Prose lacks formal structure of meter or rhyme. It is considered to be the use of plain words, but it also can be complex, elaborate, and figurative.

Prose, although once considered ordinary, dull and unimaginative, has developed in meaning to describe well-written pieces of literature. One should still consider *prose* to mean *without metrical structure*.

Merriam-Webster defines the word as follows:

prose

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Pronunciation: \ 'prōz\

Function: noun

Etymology: Middle English, from Anglo-French, from Latin *prosa*, from feminine of *prosus*, *prosus*, straightforward, being in prose, contraction of *proversus*, past participle of *provertere* to turn forward, from *pro-* forward + *vertere* to turn

Date: 14th century

1a: the ordinary language people use in speaking or writing

1b: a literary medium distinguished from poetry especially by its greater irregularity and variety of rhythm and its closer correspondence to the patterns of everyday speech

2: a prosaic style, quality, or condition

Allegory: A symbolic narrative with a secondary meaning. Obviously, Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress* is a perfect example of an allegory. The Bible uses many allegories in the Old and New Testaments. The prophets many times used allegories. Jesus spake in parables.

Example: Nathan before David when he told of the poor man's lamb. (2 Samuel 12)

Alliteration: The repetition of sounds, especially at the beginning of words.

Example: The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their means; and my people love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof? (Jeremiah 5:31)

Anapaest or **Anapest** (short-short-long): A metrical foot of three syllables, two short (or unstressed) followed by one long (or stressed). The anapest is the reverse of the dactyl.

Example: They answered him, Jesus of Nazareth. Jesus saith unto them, I am he. And Judas also, which betrayed him, stood with them. (John 18:5)

Assonance: The repetition of a similar vowel sound in a sentence.

Example: Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. (I Corinthians 13:7).

Caesura: A natural pause or break in a line, usually near the middle.

Example: The LORD is my shepherd; I shall not want. (Psalm 23:1)

Connotation: Associations made by a word that goes beyond its meaning.

Example: A little leaven leaveneth the whole lump. (Galatians 5:9)

Consonance: The repetition of similar consonant sounds, especially at the ends of words.

Example: He must increase, but I must decrease. (John 3:30)

Couplet: A pair of lines that are the same length (sometimes rhyme) and form a complete thought.

Example: Answer not a fool according to his folly, lest thou also be like unto him. Answer a fool according to his folly, lest he be wise in his own conceit. (Proverbs 26:4, 5)

Cretic or **Amphimacer** (long-short-long): A metrical foot of three syllables, one long (or stressed), followed by one short (or unstressed) and one long (or stressed).

Example: Wherefore, my beloved brethren, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath: (James 1:19)

Dactyl (long-short-short): A metrical foot of three syllables, one long (or stressed) followed by two short (or unstressed). As in, "verily." The dactyl is the opposite of the anapest.

Example: Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again,

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

he cannot see the kingdom of God. (John 3:3)

Denotation: The actual and specific meaning of the word.

Dialogue: The conversation between characters.

Example: Probably best illustrated by the Book of Job when Job and his friends speak back and forth.

Diction: The choice of words used by the speaker. One can tell whether the speaker is of a certain area or background by the words he uses. *For example, Paul's writings compared to Peter's.*

Enjambment: A run-on line that does not end in a stop or complete written thought. *Example: Yet now, if thou wilt forgive their sin – ; and if not, blot me, I pray thee, out of thy book which thou hast written.* (Exodus 32:32).

Foot: Two or more syllables that make up a rhythm. An iamb is a foot that has two syllables (short-long or unstressed-stressed). An anapest is a foot that has three syllables (short-short-long or unstressed-unstressed-long).

Hyperbole: A figure of speech in which deliberate exaggeration is used for emphasis. Hyperbole is the opposite of litotes.

Example: Their heart cried unto the Lord, O wall of the daughter of Zion, let tears run down like a river day and night: give thyself no rest; let not the apple of thine eye cease. (Lamentations 2:18)

Example: Thy teeth are as a flock of sheep which go up from the washing, whereof every one beareth twins, and there is not one barren among them. (Song of Solomon 6:6)

Iamb (short-long): A metrical foot of two syllables, one short (or unstressed) and one long (or stressed).

Example: For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. (John 3:16)

Irony: A contrast of what is said and what happens or is expected to happen.

Example: For many are called, but few are chosen. (Matthew 22:14)

Literal language: Writers and speaker mean exactly what their words denote.

Example: In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. (Genesis 1:1)

Litotes: A figure of speech in which a positive is stated by negating its opposite. This type of speech is used many times by Luke.

Example: For a certain man named Demetrius, a silversmith, which made silver shrines for Diana, brought no small gain unto the craftsmen; (Acts 19:24)

Metaphor: A figure of speech in which two things are compared, by saying one thing is another.

Examples: And one of the elders saith unto me, Weep not: behold, the Lion of the tribe of Juda, the Root of David, hath prevailed to open the book, and to loose the seven seals thereof. (Revelation 5:5)

Example: Dan shall be a serpent by the way, an adder in the path, that biteth the horse heels, so that his rider shall fall backward. (Genesis 49:17)

Meter: The arrangement of a line by the number of syllables and the rhythm of accented (or stressed) syllables. These are also described as these:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

- Iambic Pentameter: A type of meter in which there are five iambs to a line. Monometer: A line of poetry that has one metrical foot.
- Dimeter: A line of poetry that has two metrical feet.
- Trimeter: A line of poetry that has three metrical feet.
- Tetrameter: A line of poetry that has four metrical feet.
- Pentameter: A line of poetry that has five metrical feet.
- Hexameter: A line of poetry that has six metrical feet.
- Heptameter: A line of poetry that has seven metrical feet.
- Octometer: A line of poetry that has eight metrical feet.
- Rising Meter goes from unstressed to stressed. Falling Meter goes from stressed to unstressed.

Metonymy: A figure of speech in which one closely related word is used in place of another. *For example, Alpha and Omega represent first and last, or beginning and ending.*

Example: I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the ending, saith the Lord, which is, and which was, and which is to come, the Almighty. (Revelation 1:8)

Example: Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life. (John 8:12)

Narrative: Telling a story.

Example: Much of the Bible is narrative: Genesis through Ester; Gospels through Acts.

Onomatopoeia: A figure of speech using a word to imitate sounds.

Example: The Jews then murmured at him, because he said, I am the bread which came down from heaven. (John 6:41)

Oxymoron: rhetorical antithesis, bringing together two contradictory terms.

Example: Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots? then may ye also do good, that are accustomed to do evil. (Jeremiah 13:23)

Parable: A brief story that illustrates a moral lesson.

Example: The Good Samaritan. (Luke 10)

Parody: A mocking representation of someone's work or behavior.

Example: And it came to pass at noon, that Elijah mocked them, and said, Cry aloud: for he is a god; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked. (1 Kings 18:27)

Personification: A figure of speech in which a thing is given human attributes. *Example: And he answered and said unto them, I tell you that, if these should hold their peace, the stones would immediately cry out. (Luke 19:40)*

Point of View: The angle of vision from which a story is narrated.

Example: John's view of heaven in Revelation chapter 5.

Pyrrhic (short-short): A metrical foot with two short (or unstressed) syllables.

Example: It is better to dwell in the corner of the housetop, than with a brawling woman and in a wide house. (Proverbs 25:24).

Refrain: A phrase or line that is repeated throughout a Psalm, usually after every stanza.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Example: Oh that men would praise the LORD for his goodness.... (Psalm 107)

Rhyme: The matching of the final vowel or consonant sounds of words.

*Example: Beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. (I Corinthians 13:7).
It is not good to eat much honey: so for men to search their own glory is not glory. (Proverbs 25:27)*

Rhythm: The recurrence of accent or stress in lines of verse.

Example: A whip for the horse, a bridle for the ass, and a rod for the fool's back. (Proverbs 26:3).

Setting: The time and place that established the context.

Example: I John, who also am your brother, and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos, for the word of God, and for the testimony of Jesus Christ.

I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet, (Revelation 1:9, 10)

Simile: A figure of speech in which two things are compared using "like" or "as."

*Example: As cold waters to a thirsty soul, so is good news from a far country. (Proverbs 25:25)
A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver. (Proverbs 25:11)*

Spondee (long-long): A metrical foot of two syllables, both of which are long (or stressed).

Stanza: Two or more lines that form a division. They usually follow the same pattern or meter.

Example: Psalm 119 is a very good example. It has 8 verses for each letter of the Hebrew alphabet.

Stress: The prominence or emphasis given to particular syllables.

Style: The way the writer chooses and arranges words to describe ideas. Subject: What or whom the writing is about.

Symbol: An object or action that stands for something other than itself.

Example: The image in Nebuchadnezzar's dream. (Daniel 2).

Synecdoche: A figure of speech in which a part is used to designate the whole or the reverse. God refers to the tribes of Joseph and Ephraim simply by their names.

*Example: Say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I will take the stick of **Joseph**, which is in the hand of **Ephraim**, and the tribes of Israel his fellows, and will put them with him, even with the stick of Judah, and make them one stick, and they shall be one in mine hand. (Ezekiel 37:19)*

Syntax: The grammatical order of words, sometimes rearranged for effect.

*Example: And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and **upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.** (Matthew 16:18)*

Theme: The idea of a literary work.

Example: The Proverbs of Solomon the Son of David, King of Israel; (Proverbs 1:1)

Tone: The implied attitude of the writer or speaker toward a subject or person.

Example: Jesus called Herod a fox. (Luke 13:32)

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

Trochee (long-short): A metrical foot of two syllables, one long (or stressed) and one short (or unstressed).

Trope: A figure of speech in which words are used in a figurative sense (sometimes a metaphor or a metonymy).

Verse: A single metrical line of poetry.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

ANOTHER WORD ABOUT THE KING JAMES VERSION ON ITS 400 YEAR ANNIVERSARY

N. Sebastian Desent, Ph.D., Th.D., D.D., Pastor, Historic Baptist Church, Wickford, RI
www.HistoricBaptist.org

January 10, 2011

I am sure there will be hundreds of articles and dozens of books written on this subject this year. By God's grace I shall add to that library.

Recently, I read an article in the *Providence Journal* on this subject, and frankly it was underwhelming and confusing. As a result of that reading, I decided to humbly submit my point of view to the *Projo*, with the hopes that they will give equal time, and that the core truth of this version can be made plain to the masses that lack deep knowledge of the *KJV*.

The Authorized Version of the Holy Bible (also known as *The King James Version*) has been a controversial Book since the beginning of its translation. Of all books, this Version has been attacked a thousand-fold more than any other; and in contrast, it has been loved a million-fold more. There is a reason nobody ever died for a modernist version of the Scriptures, but I have not met a real Bible-believer who would give up his King James Bible, even with the threat of death.

There are historical, textual, and practical reasons why this version of the Bible has been the number one published book in history, and why it is considered the summit of beauty and *the best example* of English literature – even surpassing Shakespeare and Chaucer.

I shall briefly explain the first two reasons (historical and textual) and follow up with a longer explanation of the practical reasons.

Historical Reasons

Europe was largely under the influence of the Pope and just coming out of the Dark Ages when the Authorized Version was published. Christians had long been prevented free access to the scriptures during this time. Persecutions were everywhere, but in Geneva the Christians had some liberty to publish and read and possess the scriptures. It was these scriptures that were used as a testimony for the Authorized Version. This was God's timing to send the Light of His word to every man. God, foreseeing that English would be the lingua franca of the modern world, provided his word for the benefit of all nations.

When the Scottish King James came to power, he, under the power and authority of the English crown, authorized an official Version of the Bible intended to be read by all. James IV of Scotland, now King James I of all England, had been exposed to Bible truths in the mountains of Scotland. This was a place where no foreign army had ever conquered and imposed their government's religion. For fifteen centuries – from the time Pricilla and Aquila brought the Apostle Paul's teachings to the British Isles, the truth of the Gospel of God's Salvation and holiness was allowed to blossom freely.

This new king understood the importance of getting God's word to his people. He chose the best minds at Cambridge, Oxford, and Westminster to translate the sacred scriptures – a feat no one

has been able to match in the history of the world. Not only were these men the best in all history (past

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

and future) at what they did, they also checked each other's work, and also had availability to all the scholars in the English realm for their expertise in respect to certain passages. They also based much of the new translation on the proved English versions printed previously. The KJV was authorized by a king, something unheard of in history. It reminds me of the verse – *where the word of the king is, there is power*.

“The proof of the pudding is on the eating,” Cervantes said. From 1611 onward, the masses of English-speaking people have overwhelmingly used this Version as their personal Bible. Billions of copies have been printed, and the King of Books still goes strong.

Textual Reasons

Those involved in the study of *Textual Criticism* understand why we have so many Bible versions and translations, and they know how to identify the good from the bad.

There are over 5,000 extant manuscripts of the scriptures, and a multitude of editions of Hebrew, Greek, and other language testaments that have been published over the centuries. Some are good, most are poor, and many are just plain strange. In the English language alone, we have over 100 versions of the New Testament. Are they all good? Are they all profitable? If the Apostle Paul warned in the first century A.D. of those who would corrupt the word of God, why would anyone expect that anything would have changed.

The Roman Catholics use for the most part their own *Codex Vaticanus* with the Old Testament in Greek (also called the *Septuagint*, or LXX in critical apparatus) for the basis of their many translations.

The modernist versions normally use a *Westcott-Hort*, a *UBS*, a *Nestles*, or some similar text for the basis of their versions. These are very similar to and have the same basis as the Roman Catholic texts. The Jehovah's Witnesses use this same basis for their bible (the New World Translation).

The Protestant *King James Bible* translators, however, rejected what they called the Popish versions (considering them to be corrupted) and instead based their version on the pure Antiochian Greek text for the New Testament and the pure Masoretic Hebrew Text for the Old. It was the church in Antioch that was the authorizing church for the Apostle Paul's missionary journeys.

In contrast to the *Alexandrian Text of Vaticanus* (Codex B), the KJV is based on the Antiochian Text, otherwise known as the Majority Text, or Textus Receptus. The history of this pure line of manuscripts is too long for this paper, but a diligent student can find a multitude on information on this subject. New Testament Greek texts in this pure line came through Erasmus, Beza, the Elzivers, and Stephanus. This text is called the *Majority Text* because the majority of manuscript witnesses agree to the readings. This is what the KJV translators used. On the other hand, *Vaticanus* has its beginning at the library in Alexandria, Egypt, where Origen rewrote the New Testament because he was of the opinion it was not inspired by God.

Practical Reasons

It is here that I will spend most of the paper. From the time of my miraculous conversion to Christ from a life of sin and shame (I joined the Marine Corps a week after turning 17, and from that point lived a life of excess – that is, until Jesus saved me); through my layman-ship, my calling to the ministry, seminary training, post graduate studies, and over 25 years of ministry (including 20 years as pastor of Historic Baptist Church); I have believed only ONE BOOK for the inspired word of God – and that is the Authorized Version of the Holy Bible.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

I have read this BOOK over and over, memorized hundreds of passages, preached on it thousands of times, taught from it for over 25 years, and studied it intensively for every doctrine and Bible truth I believe and teach; and have brought up my family on its faithful words, building a godly home upon the Rock. I have studied and compared dozens of English versions, foreign translations, Hebrew and Greek; and I come to the same conclusion – the KJV is the Masterpiece of God’s word for the English-speaking world.

As mentioned already, the English language used in this Bible is the apex of its proper usage. Its literary value is beyond reproach. The greatest English and American patriarchs were educated from this Book. Any person intent on improving himself would not neglect a thorough study of the KJV. I recommend starting in Proverbs and then moving to the Gospel of John.

The King James Version has proved to be correct in every test. It has never failed. It makes wise the simple and humbles the proud. It reveals in inerrant beauty the mind of God. Our language and values are formed by this Book, with thousands of quotes from, “In the beginning” and, “Am I my brother’s keeper”; through, “Thou shalt not...”; to “Love thy neighbor as thyself,” and “It is more blessed to give than to receive.”

It trains the mind to read from a simple level to the highest level, as proved by university studies. It changes lives and families, churches and schools, governments and armies.

The power of its words can pierce the soul, stick in the mind, and save to the uttermost.

It is feared, hated, condemned, insulted and blasphemed by those who reject the God and Savior of its pages. But it is loved, and cherished and highly valued by those who truly seek after God, as “the hart panteth after the water brooks” (Psalm 42:1).

It is widely published by thousands of printing houses, distributed to every corner of the world, found at discount stores, online, in hotels, and everywhere man is found.

The character of a man is known by the company he keeps. In my experience, the strongest, most sanctified, zealous, and diligent Christians carry this Book. In contrast, the weakest, most confused, and immature believers use a modernist version. The KJV is milk for the babe and strong meat for the warrior. For the man who knows, there is no other.

I could go on for pages, but I will conclude with two things. First, an excerpt from a paper I wrote a year ago on the prose rhythms in this version. Lastly, a song our children like to sing about this “Blessed Old Book.” I hope this has been a blessing to you. More info can be found on www.HistoricBaptist.org.

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

PROSE RHYTHMS IN THE AUTHORIZED VERSION

The *Authorized Version of 1611* (also known as the *King James Version of the Holy Bible*) was uniformly and diligently translated considering the sound and sense of the passages. The forty- seven translators not only translated the scriptures accurately – being the best-learned men of Oxford, Cambridge, and Westminster – but they also were careful to make sure the flow of the translation was conducive to reading, quoting, and memorizing. They were careful to convey from the original tongues the meanings, tones and styles of the writers. They accomplished this by wording the English in such a way that the choice and sounds of words complimented each other, and the rhythm of words reflected the divine inspiration of the very words of God.

The care taken by the AV translators to arrange the perfectly-translated words show their reverence and love for the word of God – they gave this Bible an accuracy, beauty, and melody unmatched by any other translation of the Bible. Not only is the AV the perfect English Bible, but it is the prime example of beautiful metrically-written English. Not even the writings of Chaucer or Shakespeare come close to the majesty and beauty of the *Authorized Version*.

Understanding and identifying the different rhythms in the Authorized Version will help a student of the Bible, and a preacher of the word, to better emphasize the truth, speak more pleasing to the ear, and improve his homiletic delivery.

An article in *The British Weekly* for December 27, 1956, referring to *Certain Rhythms in the English Bible* by Dr. Lane Cooper (Cornell University Press), it stated: “If preachers, orators and writers would spend a little time noting the rhythms of that version, they would grow discontented with the sentences that please them now.”

The prose in the *Authorized Version* can be defined by these styles and rhythms: dactyls, anapests, spondees, iambus, feet, trochees, etc. The translators were also able to preserve the intent, styles, connotations, etc. of the original inspired words. I will describe the rhythms and other forms below and give some examples for the reader. My hope is that through identifying and studying these things the reader will gain a greater appreciation for the Authorized Version.

Continued at www.HistoricBaptist.org

This Blessed Old Book

It's a well of pure water when I'm thirsty and dry,
And bread when I'm hungry and worn.
When the battle is raging it's my faithful sword,
A shelter from life's troubling storms.

It's a light to my pathway and a lamp to my feet,
When the road gets so dark I can't see.
I've not made one change in the words that it says,
But it sure made a change in me.

CHORUS:

CLASS 214A DOCTRINE OF THE SCRIPTURES

This blessed old book that I hold in my hands
Is true from beginning to end.
It's a solid foundation where I firmly stand.
Sin kept me from it, now it keeps me from sin.

When I think what it cost just to hold in my hands,
It reminds me of all those great men,
And all of the martyrs who have gone on before,
Who followed with their dying breath.

Now its critics are many and believers are few,
But one thing I've found to be true;
If you find when you read it that there's something wrong,
There's something wrong with you.

Pastor Desent is senior pastor at Historic Baptist Church in Wickford. He is a father of nine, a grandfather, and one who describes himself as "a beggar who found bread just tellin' others where to get it." He has written many papers, which can be found at www.HistoricBaptist.org.